



**Trial Design and Endpoints in hepatocellular carcinoma:
AASLD Consensus Conference**

Journal:	<i>Hepatology</i>
Manuscript ID	HEP-20-0226.R1
Wiley - Manuscript type:	Original
Date Submitted by the Author:	31-Mar-2020
Complete List of Authors:	<p>Llovet, Josep M.; Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, Division of Liver Diseases; IDIBAPS, Hospital Clínic, Barcelona. University of Barcelona, Head, Translational Research in Liver Cancer, Liver Unit; Institució Catalana d'Estudis Avançats (ICREA)</p> <p>Villanueva, Augusto; Tisch Cancer Institute, Department of Medicine, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, Liver Cancer Research Program, Division of Liver Diseases</p> <p>Marrero, Jorge; UT Southwestern Medical Center, Department of Internal Medicine</p> <p>Schwartz, Myron; Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai Tisch Cancer Institute,</p> <p>Meyer, Tim; University College London Cancer Institute, Hem/Oncology</p> <p>Galle, Peter; Mainz University, Department of Internal Medicine I</p> <p>Lencioni, Riccardo; University of Pisa School of Medicine and Surgery, Radiology; Miami Cancer Institute</p> <p>Greten, Tim; Gastrointestinal Malignancy Section, Thoracic and Gastrointestinal Oncology Branch, Center for Cancer Research, National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health,</p> <p>Kudo, Masatoshi; Kindai University, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology</p> <p>Mandrekar, Sumithra J; Mayo Clinic College of Medicine and Science, Health Sciences Research</p> <p>Zhu, Andrew; Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Oncology; Jiahui International Cancer Center</p> <p>Finn, Richard; Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, Medicine-Hematology/ Oncology</p> <p>Roberts, Lewis; Mayo Clinic, Gastroenterology & Hepatology</p>
Keywords:	Trial Design, End Points, Randomized control trials, PFS (Progression free survival), Hepatocellular Carcinoma

SCHOLARONE™
Manuscripts

1
2 **Title: Trial Design and Endpoints in hepatocellular carcinoma: AASLD Consensus**
3 **Conference.**
4
5
6

7 **Authors:** Josep M. Llovet^{1,2,3} Augusto Villanueva¹, Jorge A. Marrero⁴, Myron Schwartz¹,
8 Tim Meyer⁵, Peter R. Galle⁶, Riccardo Lencioni^{7,8}, Tim F. Greten⁹, Masatoshi Kudo¹⁰,
9 Sumithra J. Mandrekar¹¹, Andrew X. Zhu^{12,13}, Richard S. Finn¹⁴, Lewis R. Roberts¹⁵, for
10 AASLD Panel of experts on Trial Design in HCC.
11
12
13
14

15 **Affiliations:** ¹Mount Sinai Liver Cancer Program, Division of Liver Diseases, Tisch Cancer
16 Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, NY, USA; ²Translational
17 Research in Hepatic Oncology, Liver Unit, IDIBAPS, Hospital Clinic, University of
18 Barcelona, Catalonia, Spain; ³Institució Catalana d'Estudis Avançats (ICREA), Barcelona,
19 Catalonia, Spain. ⁴UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, Texas; ⁵Dept Oncology,
20 University College London Cancer Institute; ⁶I. Dept. of Internal Medicine, Mainz University
21 Medical Center, Mainz, Germany; ⁷Department of Radiology, University of Pisa School of
22 Medicine; ⁸ Miami Cancer Institute, Miami, FL; ⁹Gastrointestinal Malignancy Section,
23 Thoracic and Gastrointestinal Oncology Branch, Center for Cancer Research, National
24 Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland; ¹⁰Department of
25 Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Kindai University Faculty of Medicine, Osaka-Sayama,
26 Osaka, Japan. ¹¹Department of Health Sciences Research, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN.
27 ¹²Massachusetts General Hospital Cancer Center, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA,
28 USA; ¹³Jiahui International Cancer Center, Shanghai, China; ¹⁴ Geffen School of Medicine
29 at UCLA, California; ¹⁵Gastroenterology & Hepatology Dept. Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN.
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37

38 **Conflict of interest:** Josep M Llovet is receiving research support from Bayer HealthCare
39 Pharmaceuticals, Eisai Inc, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Ipsen and Boehringer-Ingelheim and
40 consulting fees from Eisai Inc, Merck, Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals, Bristol-Myers
41 Squibb, Celsion Corporation, Eli Lilly, Ipsen, Glycotest, Roche, AstraZeneca, Sirtex, Nucleix
42 and Can-Fite. Augusto Villanueva has received consulting fees from Guidepoint and
43 Fujifilm; advisory board fees from Exact Sciences, Nucleix, Gilead and NGM
44 Pharmaceuticals, and research support from Eisai Pharmaceuticals. Jorge Marrero reports
45 consulting from Glycotest. Peter Galle is receiving research support from Bayer HealthCare
46 Pharmaceuticals and consulting fees from Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals, Bristol-
47 Myers Squibb, Eisai Inc, Merck, Eli Lilly, Ipsen, Roche, AstraZeneca, Sirtex. Tim Meyer has
48 received advisory board fees from Eisai, Roche, AstraZeneca, Ipsen, BTG and Tarveda.
49 Masatoshi Kudo is receiving lecture fee from Eisai Inc, Bayer, MSD, research support from
50 Eisai Inc, Gilead, Takeda, Otsuka, Taiho, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Ono Pharmaceutical and
51 consulting fees from Bayer, Eisai, Ono, MSD, BMS, Eli Lilly, Roche, AstraZeneca, Chugai.
52 Andrew Zhu reports research funding from Bayer, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Eli Lilly, Merck, and
53 Novartis, and is a consultant/advisory board member for AstraZeneca, Bayer, Bristol-Myers
54 Squibb, Eisai, Eli Lilly, Exelixis, Merck, Novartis, Roche, and Sanofi. Richard Finn reports
55 consulting fees from AstraZeneca, Bayer, BristolMyersSquibb, CStone, Eisai, Eli Lilly,
56
57
58
59
60

1
2 Merck, Novartis, Pfizer, Roche/Genentech. Lewis Roberts reports research funding from
3 Bayer, BTG International, Exact Sciences, Gilead Sciences, Glycotest, Redhill Biopharma,
4 TARGET PharmaSolutions, and Wako Diagnostics, and is a consultant/advisory board
5 member for Bayer, Exact Sciences, Gilead Sciences, GRAIL, QED Therapeutics, and
6 TAVEC.
7
8

9 All other co-authors do not have conflicts to disclose.
10
11
12

13 **Acknowledgements:** Josep M Llovet is supported by European Commission (EC)/Horizon
14 2020 Program (HEPCAR, Ref. 667273-2), EIT Health (CRISH2, Ref. 18053), Accelerator
15 Award (*CRUCK, AEEC, AIRC*) (HUNTER, Ref. C9380/A26813), National Cancer Institute
16 (P30-CA196521), U.S. Department of Defense (CA150272P3), Samuel Waxman Cancer
17 Research Foundation, Spanish National Health Institute (SAF2016-76390) and the
18 Generalitat de Catalunya/AGAUR (SGR-1358). Augusto Villanueva is supported by the
19 Department of Defense (CA150272P3). Tim Greten is supported by the Intramural
20 Research Program of the NIH, National Cancer Institute, Center for Cancer Research.
21 Sumithra J. Mandrekar is supported by a P30CA15083 grant. Andrew Zhu has received
22 research support from V Foundation for Cancer Research, and DOD of Defense Team
23 Science Translational Award. Richard Finn is supported by US Dept of Defense IDEA
24 Award. Tim Meyer is supported by the NIHR UCLH Biomedical Research Centre. Lewis
25 Roberts is supported by the National Cancer Institute (P50 CA210964).
26
27
28
29

30 **Correspondence:** Josep M. Llovet, MD, PhD, FAASLD. Mount Sinai Liver Cancer
31 Program, Division of Liver Diseases, Tisch Cancer Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at
32 Mount Sinai, Madison Ave 1425. 11F-70. Box 1123, New York, NY10029. USA. E-mail:
33 josep.llovet@mssm.edu
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

Abstract

Proper trial design is critical for the success of clinical investigations. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is a complex disease that has several unique properties. In 2008, after the approval of sorafenib, a panel of experts proposed guidelines for trial design and endpoints in HCC that have been instrumental during the last decade and provided a framework to allow an homogeneous analysis of reported investigations. Since then, several phase III studies have been reported and novel challenges have emerged. A panel of experts conveyed by AASLD organized a Special Topic Conference on trial design and endpoints to address those emerging challenges. This review summarizes the analysis and conclusions of those discussions and provides novel recommendations on the selection endpoints, stratification variables and targeted populations in the complex arena of HCC. We have covered the full spectrum of the disease, from surveillance/ chemoprevention, to neoadjuvant and adjuvant trials after curative therapies, and trials in intermediate and advanced stages of HCC. We explore the prospects for incorporating biomarkers and liquid biopsy into conventional clinical trials. In addition, we address the need for obtaining tissue and blood samples in all investigations and propose novel primary endpoints such as progression free survival with restrictive rules and patient reported outcomes. This up-dated set of recommendations is timely considering the advent of more potent combination therapies in all areas of HCC management, the increase in adverse events associated with those combinations, and the evidence that several lines of effective treatments will benefit a given patient. We herein articulate a framework to facilitate capturing the efficacy of novel therapeutic strategies with the goal of improving the outcomes of patients suffering from this disease.

Introduction

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the fourth leading cause of cancer-related mortality worldwide(1,2). This neoplasm has some unique characteristics. It occurs in most cases complicating underlying cirrhosis, has specific non-invasive criteria for diagnosis, follows a unique staging system and historically has been resistant to conventional chemotherapy. Several treatments have achieved adoption as standard of care according to clinical practice guidelines, including potentially curative therapies (i.e. resection, liver transplantation and local ablation) for early tumors, transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) for intermediate stage tumors, and systemic drugs for advanced tumors in front line (sorafenib and lenvatinib) and second line (regorafenib, cabozantinib and ramucirumab)(3–5). Life expectancy has improved progressively in all stages of the disease. Effective implementation of surveillance for patients at risk of developing HCC and access to current proven therapies has been a milestone. Overall, median survival times beyond 5 years are expected for early stages, about 20-30 months for intermediate stages, and between 10-16 months for advanced stage HCC [Fig. 1(3,4,6)]. Novel drugs and combinations continue to enter the research arena to address unmet medical needs. All these research activities require precise endpoints and tools for measuring clinical benefits.

Thus, clinical trial design has become a major focus of attention in HCC research. Since randomized controlled trials are the main source of evidence for drug approvals in oncology, it is of paramount relevance to understand the critical endpoints and tools for measuring them, as well as optimal strategies for identifying and enrolling target populations and for patient stratification. It has become evident that a deep understanding of factors determining HCC outcomes and trial design is required to achieve optimal results. There are trials with a non-inferiority design that have been positive, and lead to drug approval, while others demonstrate superior outcomes in surrogate end-points, such as progression free survival (PFS) or patient reported outcomes but not in the primary endpoint of overall survival. Some recent trials have also been reported to be statistically negative but “clinically positive”. It is important to understand the reasons for the failure or success of a trial in order to move the field forward. In addition, while several positive phase III trials for advanced HCC have recently changed clinical practice (7–11), no major advances have occurred in the area of surveillance and early detection, adjuvant therapies after resection/ablation or management of intermediate stage HCC over the last 15 years. The lack of effective novel drugs/devices may be the cause of negative studies in these areas, but suboptimal trial design may also have jeopardized the likelihood of a positive result. With this challenge in mind, the Hepatobiliary Neoplasia Special Interest Group of the American Association for the Study of Liver Disease (AASLD) organized a Single Topic Conference in Atlanta in 2019 to address these issues. This position paper summarizes the major concepts discussed in the conference with the aim of updating the proposals previously reported by a similar AASLD panel in 2008(12).

Overview on trial design and endpoints

Clinical trials are essential to establish the clinical efficacy of new therapeutic interventions. They are instrumental in developing clinical practice guidelines and form the basis for evidence-based medicine(13). An adequate clinical trial design is crucial, as an effective drug can be discarded due to a poor trial design and *vice-versa*. The main considerations when designing a clinical trial are to: a) select a well-defined target patient population (i.e., inclusion and exclusion criteria), b) pre-specify clear endpoints (primary and secondary) and data analysis plan, c) specify randomization and allocation method; and d) secure efficacy of randomization (stratification at enrollment for prognostic variables). Based on these and other variables, the quality of clinical trials can be quantified using different scores such as

1
2 the Jadad score(14), the Delphi List(15), the CONSORT statement(16,17), and the
3 Cochrane Back Review Group criteria(18). Until the SHARP trial(11), which established the
4 benefit of sorafenib in advanced stages HCC patients, the quality of the trials conducted in
5 HCC was commonly modest. A systematic review found that only 50% of the clinical trials
6 reported between 2002 and 2005 in HCC were deemed high quality as per the modified
7 Jadad score(19). The 2008 position paper resulting from the AASLD conference provided a
8 useful framework for academic centers, industry partners and regulators on the design of
9 trials in HCC(12). Subsequently, the quality of clinical trials assessing systemic therapies
10 has significantly improved. There has been less activity in terms of high-end clinical trials in
11 other treatment areas. This position paper will extensively discuss the singularities of trial
12 design in every clinical aspect of HCC management.
13
14

15 In clinical trials, the benefit of an intervention is quantified using endpoints, which are
16 predefined events that once reached exclude the patient from further evaluation within the
17 trial. There are 3 main types of endpoints: hard, surrogate and patient-reported, all
18 extensively described elsewhere(20). Hard endpoints are well defined and easy to measure
19 objectively. The archetypes of a hard endpoint are overall survival (OS) or cancer-related
20 survival. Surrogate endpoints, such as progression-free survival or time to progression,
21 partially rely on the quantification of tumor response, generally using imaging techniques
22 and pre-specified criteria(21). Surrogate endpoints are more vulnerable than hard
23 endpoints, but they have several advantages including their convenience in terms of event
24 accumulation and trial feasibility. Patient-reported endpoints, sometimes referred as soft
25 endpoints, are subjective measures such as quality of life (QoL), in most instances obtained
26 from questionnaires. Overall recommendations of trial design and endpoints in HCC are
27 detailed in **Table 1**, whereas expected outcomes for standard of care therapeutic
28 interventions within these trials are summarized in **Table 2**.
29
30
31

32 Endpoints

33 OS is defined by the time between patient randomization and death from any cause. OS is
34 usually recommended as the primary endpoint for randomized phase III clinical trials(12).
35 OS is the endpoint most frequently used by regulatory agencies to approve drugs as it is
36 objective and clinically relevant. In HCC, as most patients suffer from concomitant cirrhosis,
37 death can result from competing risks, mainly liver toxicity and failure. This fact underscores
38 the need for detailed assessments of safety with any intervention in this population. It is
39 important to capture adverse events in early phase clinical studies as well as in larger
40 randomized studies. Failures in phase 3 studies have been seen from new agents that are
41 more toxic in an HCC population than in other tumor types(22). The competing risk of
42 cirrhosis can introduce bias when evaluating the anti-tumoral activity of a therapeutic
43 intervention, but it can be easily controlled by imposing stringent inclusion criteria in terms
44 of liver function (i.e., Child-Pugh score A without hepatic decompensation). OS has some
45 limitations such as the long follow-up time required to capture the number of events needed
46 to verify significantly improved survival in the experimental arm(23). This can be a critical
47 limitation when exploring interventions at early or intermediate stages. Also, OS can be
48 confounded by sequential therapies received by patients after tumor progression, which for
49 instance affected 30% of patients enrolled in the lenvatinib trial(7) and up to 50% of patients
50 in the Checkmate 459 comparing nivolumab vs sorafenib(24). Hence, there is a need to
51 develop surrogate endpoints, which are defined as outcomes not inherently meaningful from
52 the clinical standpoint, but thought to accurately predict hard outcomes such as OS(25).
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

The main surrogate endpoints in oncology are progression-free survival (PFS), time-to-
progression (TTP) and objective response rate (ORR). PFS is the time between patient

1
2 randomization and death or radiological tumor progression, whichever occurs first. There
3 are different tools assessing tumor response with imaging. The most established tool for
4 measuring tumor response in oncology are the RECIST criteria(26), initially developed to
5 evaluate response to cytotoxic drugs. These criteria were adapted to account for HCC
6 singularities in the modified RECIST (mRECIST) version, which incorporates viable tumour
7 detected with arterial enhancement as a key component to evaluate response(21,27). Using
8 mRECIST criteria increases the percentage of subjects who achieve objective response
9 compared to standard RECIST, as shown in different studies of systemic therapies (28–32).
10 A recent meta-analysis evaluated the power of PFS to predict OS in phase 3 trials testing
11 systemic therapies in advanced HCC(20). The study found a moderate correlation between
12 PFS and OS in 21 RCTs. The authors proposed a conservative surrogate threshold of ≤ 0.6
13 for hazard ratio of PFS to predict clinically relevant improvements in OS(33). TTP is defined
14 as the time elapsed between patient randomization and radiological tumor progression.
15 Scheduling repeated radiological assessment of response every 6-8 weeks is mandatory
16 for patients included in trials. Data from SHARP and subsequent studies challenges the
17 implied correlation between TTP and OS. The type of progression may also have clinical
18 implications (34). Survival is worse if patients develop a new extrahepatic lesion and/or
19 vascular invasion as opposed to tumor progression resulting from growth of an existing
20 lesion or a new intrahepatic lesion. Lastly, ORR is the percentage of patients with an
21 objective tumor response, and its correlation with OS is worse than for PFS or TTP(20).
22 This is partially inherent to the use of odds ratios instead of hazard ratios for ORR and also
23 to the fact that only a small proportion of patients achieve an objective response (<25%, for
24 approved drugs in advanced HCC), which is the event that correlates with OS(31).
25 Nonetheless, ORR has been reported as an independent predictor of survival in early HCC
26 treated with radiofrequency ablation, intermediate treated with TACE and advanced HCC
27 treated with TKI(27). The impact of the duration of response, which has been reported to be
28 around 12 months for checkpoint inhibitors vs. less than 6 months for TKIs, has not yet been
29 properly incorporated into response assessment. The same is true to small reductions in
30 tumor size not reaching standard thresholds for objective response. In some cases, duration
31 of disease control may be more clinically relevant than the extent of reduction in tumor size.
32 Also, in the case of immune checkpoint inhibitors, tumor response can have a longer lag-
33 time compared to other molecular therapies and can even mimic progression shortly after
34 treatment initiation (*i.e.*, pseudo-progression(35)). This has led to the development of
35 immune-related response criteria(36), which require confirmation of progression at least 4
36 weeks after progressive disease is first documented.

37
38
39
40
41
42
43 Surrogate endpoints are frequently used by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to
44 approve drugs under the accelerated program, which was initially developed to facilitate
45 early access to new antivirals during the worst years of the HIV epidemic(37). In HCC, the
46 FDA has used ORR and duration of response to grant accelerated approval of the immune
47 checkpoint inhibitors (CPI) nivolumab(38), pembrolizumab(39) and recently the combination
48 of ipilimumab and nivolumab(40). Accelerated approval is not universal and includes some
49 subjectivity from regulators in regards to the strength of the evidence to support approval
50 without a randomized phase 3 study(24,41). In addition, while the use of ORR and other
51 surrogate endpoints may be used to support regulatory approval, they do not necessarily
52 support inclusion in guidelines which often adhere to a higher level of evidence. Despite
53 their common use, surrogate endpoints are vulnerable to interpretation bias. Besides the
54 strength of the endpoint, it is key to determine when the benefit provided by a new therapy
55 is really clinically meaningful. This can be controversial, depending on factors such as the
56 perceptions of patients, providers, health insurers and regulators. In HCC, there is no set
57 threshold that defines a clinically meaningful benefit, but some authors have suggested a
58 hazard ratio cutoff of OS ≤ 0.8 as a starting point for clinical trial design(42). In fact, all
59
60

1
2 positive trials in HCC have led to significant differences in survival with HR below this
3 threshold.
4

6 **Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: design and endpoints**

7
8 Surveillance for HCC is one of the milestones advancing the management of HCC, despite
9 that there is not unquestionable data directly supporting a decrease in cancer-related death
10 in persons on surveillance(43). Ultrasound (US), with or without alpha-fetoprotein (AFP),
11 performed every six months is the current standard and is recommended for surveillance of
12 patients with cirrhosis of any cause or chronic hepatitis B without cirrhosis above a regional
13 and gender appropriate age cut-off determined by expert liver societies(3,4). Overall, the
14 implementation of those programs to all targeted populations is modest, and current data
15 report detection of HCC in the setting of surveillance in between 30-50% of cases(44). In
16 meta-analysis, the pooled sensitivity and specificity of US alone has been shown to be 53%
17 (95% CI: 35-70) and 91% (95% CI:86-94), respectively, while the combination of US and
18 AFP has a sensitivity of 63% (95% CI:48-75) and a specificity of 85% (95%CI:77-89)(45).
19 Due to the relatively low sensitivity and specificity of this approach for detecting early stage
20 HCC, particularly in North America, where high rates of central obesity decrease the
21 performance of ultrasound, a recent study showed that this strategy leads to 27% of patients
22 with cirrhosis experiencing harms such as follow up testing (CT, MRI, liver biopsy)
23 performed for false-positive or indeterminate results(46). Further, due to low implementation
24 of comprehensive strategies for HCC surveillance, more than 60% of HCCs in North
25 America, Europe, Africa and large parts of Asia, excepting Taiwan and Japan, are
26 diagnosed with intermediate or advanced stage HCC(47). There is, therefore, an urgent
27 need for better performing, low cost surveillance strategies in HCC, and accounting for both
28 the benefits and harms of surveillance strategies is important.
29
30
31

32
33 Within this overriding context, there is excitement time because advances in genetic,
34 epigenetic, proteomic, glycoproteomic and metabolomic analyses in have enabled large
35 scale multi-omic analyses of HCC tissues, circulating tumor DNA, plasma and serum,
36 resulting in the accelerated identification of novel biomarkers(48–51). Models using
37 standard biostatistical and machine learning and artificial intelligence (AI) approaches are
38 using biomarkers combined with clinical parameters to identify persons at highest risk for
39 HCC. Models and biomarkers under active exploration include the GALAD (Gender, Age,
40 AFP-L3, AFP, and Des-carboxy-prothrombin) score(52), novel glycoproteins (fucosylated
41 kininogen)(53), liquid biopsy analyses of circulating tumor DNA for differentially methylated
42 regions(54)(55), and imaging with abbreviated MRI(56). Creating the framework for
43 validation of future surveillance is critically important.
44
45

46
47 To guide the development and evaluation of new surveillance strategies for clinical
48 utilization, a 5-phase program has been developed by the NCI- Early Detection Research
49 Network (EDRN) for biomarker that uses human samples (blood or human tissue) as well
50 as imaging tests (57). **Table 3** shows recommended phases of surveillance test validation,
51 including trial design for studies for HCC surveillance. *Phase 1* are biomarker discovery or
52 exploratory studies. *Phase 2* studies estimate the ability of a test to distinguish early stage
53 HCC from those with cirrhosis without HCC. It is important to test for confounders such as
54 age, etiology of liver disease, and liver function; and to have adequate sample size and
55 power. *Phase 3* studies enroll at risk individuals and follow them for clinical diagnosis of
56 HCC using prospective-specimen collection, retrospective-blinded evaluation (PRoBE)
57 design (58). The aim is to evaluate, as a function of time before clinical diagnosis, the
58 capacity of the test to detect preclinical HCC; and also, to define the criteria for a positive
59 surveillance test in preparation for phase 4 and 5 studies. Thus, Phases 1-3 rely on
60 retrospective analysis of stored data and specimens. *Phase 4* studies require the new test

1
2 be applied to patients with cirrhosis in the clinical setting to assess test performance in HCC
3 detection and false positive and negative rates. Depending on the test under study it may
4 be possible to skip *Phase 4* if the test is already used for patient care, for example,
5 evaluating an MRI for surveillance of HCC. *Phase 5* studies are randomized trials comparing
6 the new surveillance tests against the standard of care, in the case of HCC the standard
7 should be US with or without AFP, with the aim of determining whether the test can reduce
8 mortality at the population level.
9

10
11 When performing surveillance studies in patients with cirrhosis it is important to enrich the
12 *at risk* population in order to achieve a sufficient number of incident HCCs in a reasonable
13 time period. Enriching cohorts with patients of older age, viral hepatitis, male sex, Hispanic
14 ethnicity, history of diabetes, and family history of HCC should be considered (59,60).
15 Alternatively, known independent factors associated with HCC development are abnormal
16 bilirubin and platelet count $<100,000/\text{mm}^3$. There is also a need to study currently important
17 populations such as those with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease-related cirrhosis, those with
18 hepatitis C-related cirrhosis who have achieved a sustained virological response after
19 antiviral treatment, and those with suppressed hepatitis B infection on antiviral treatment.
20 These three specific populations will be the most important etiological risk factors in the next
21 decade and their HCC incidence rates (around 1%/year) appear lower than in previous at
22 risk populations(61). Methods for risk stratification within these populations will therefore
23 become increasingly important for improving the effectiveness of surveillance strategies and
24 programs. Models such as the REAL-B and PAGE-B scores, incorporating male sex, age,
25 alcohol use, baseline cirrhosis, diabetes, platelet count and AFP, allow improved risk
26 stratification of patients on oral antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis B and could potentially
27 be incorporated into surveillance programs(62).
28
29
30

31
32 An important potential confounder in studies that compare the performance of novel
33 biomarkers to current surveillance strategies is the incorporation of imaging by ultrasound
34 or other radiologic modalities into the standard of care. This may confound the results if
35 ultrasound is also used as part of the control arm for the study, as ultrasonography is itself
36 typically part of the gold standard process for determining whether a patient has HCC. Thus,
37 patients with HCCs that are not visible by ultrasound may be falsely determined to be
38 negative for cancer and a positive biomarker test erroneously labeled as a false positive. It
39 is therefore important to use a different high-accuracy imaging modality such as multiphasic
40 MRI as a gold standard in studies for which ultrasonography is part of the surveillance
41 strategy. However, use of MRI may add substantial cost to the study and may also result in
42 visualization of a number of small indeterminate false positive lesions that are seen on MRI
43 and require follow up investigation, a component of the harms associated with surveillance.
44 While studies of the performance of ultrasound with or without AFP in the clinical care setting
45 have shown suboptimal performance in detection of HCC in at risk individuals, it is not clear
46 what the performance characteristics are for phase 2, 3 or 4 biomarker studies that would
47 meet the threshold for FDA approval as a surveillance test. In general, the FDA guidelines
48 for supporting biomarker qualification recommend that analyses intended to support
49 biomarker qualification should be specified in an analysis plan with a prospective-
50 retrospective design before analyzing the data. The FDA provides no set quantitative criteria
51 for determining the relationship between the biomarker and clinical outcome, such as
52 diagnosis of HCC, within a particular context of use. Overall, the goals for *in vitro* diagnostic
53 biomarker studies are that they should produce valid scientific evidence demonstrating
54 reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the product, and protect the rights
55 and welfare of study subjects(63,64).
56
57
58

59
60 Key unmet needs in the field of chemoprevention include an improved understanding of the
potential for HCC risk reduction by chemoprevention using commonly used medications

1
2 such as aspirin and other antiplatelet agents, statins, metformin and similar agents(65–68).
3 In order to build a robust evidence base through chemoprevention trials, a number of key
4 hurdles need to be crossed, including better definition of target populations, trial enrichment
5 or stratification prior to randomization using clinical, genetic, or other molecular risk
6 stratifying strategies, and careful delineation of appropriate and clinically meaningful end-
7 points for both biomarker-based and chemoprevention trials. Enrichment of populations
8 included in chemopreventive trials should aim to a reasonable time-to event (occurrence of
9 HCC) endpoint, certainly within the threshold of 5 years. Stratification factors for at risk
10 populations have been outlined below and are mandatory to prevent imbalances. Finally,
11 one of the bottlenecks of these trials is that the accepted adverse events for maximum
12 tolerated doses (grade 3 toxicities are unacceptable) are completely different compared to
13 those accepted for primary treatments of advanced tumors, where grade 3-4 adverse events
14 at the level of 30-50% are common for currently accepted drug treatments.
15
16
17
18

19 **Early HCC stages: design of trials for resection, transplantation and local ablation**

20 Hepatic resection is the treatment of choice for patients with preserved liver function (Child's
21 class A, bilirubin < 1.0 mg/dl, no evidence of portal hypertension) who have a solitary HCC
22 > 2 cm without macrovascular invasion(3,4,69) (**Fig 1, Table 4**). Outcomes of ideal
23 candidates treated following these criteria are significantly better compared with outcomes
24 not following the guidelines (70). Recent guidelines accepted expanding criteria to include
25 patients with HCC within Milan criteria (3). While 5-year survival rates are in the range of
26 70% after resection, recurrence of HCC is also around 70% at 5 years)(71). Early (within 2
27 years) recurrence is most commonly due to the appearance of preexisting undetected
28 metastatic disease, with the most common site in the remaining liver; late recurrence is
29 predominantly the result of *de novo* development of HCC in the remaining liver. There is,
30 thus, a critical unmet need for therapy that can reduce the incidence of HCC recurrence
31 after resection.. A study demonstrating benefit of retinoid administration(72) was not
32 confirmed in a subsequent multicenter trial(73), and small studies suggesting benefit from
33 adoptive immunotherapy(74) and I-131 lipiodol embolization of the liver remnant(75) the
34 results of which have not been duplicated. To this point, all phase III high-quality adjuvant
35 trials conducted so far in this area have been negative, A large randomized, controlled trial
36 of sorafenib after resection or thermal ablation demonstrated no benefit(76). Current
37 attention is largely focused on immunotherapy. Treatment of advanced HCC with anti-PD-
38 1 or PD-L1 antibodies has consistently yielded responses in the range of 15-20%((38,39,41)
39 that are often quite durable. In non-small cell lung cancer similar response rates are seen
40 in advanced disease, and a neoadjuvant trial for resectable tumors resulted in a roughly
41 doubled response rate(77).
42
43
44
45

46 Phase 3 trials are currently underway with single-agent immunotherapy or combination
47 therapies. In advanced disease combination therapy, an anti-PD-1/PD-L1 plus either a
48 tyrosine kinase inhibitor (e.g. sorafenib, lenvatinib), an anti-VEGF antibody (e.g.
49 bevacizumab), or a second checkpoint inhibitor (e.g., anti-CTLA-4 antibody) appears to
50 significantly raise response rates, and if established in the advanced setting combination
51 therapy will no doubt be studied in adjuvant/neoadjuvant trials. The ultimate hope is that
52 effective adjuvant/neoadjuvant therapy will be able to substantially improve recurrence-free
53 survival. It is the consensus of the panel that entry criteria for adjuvant/neoadjuvant studies
54 in HCC resection should conform to the criteria for resectability currently espoused in
55 AASLD guidelines(4,69), and prevent a broadening of the tumor eligibility for resection (e.g.,
56 multiple tumors, presence of vascular invasion) observed in some currently-running
57 adjuvant trials. While all patients undergoing resection for HCC have significant risk of
58 recurrence, studies should stratify for known risk factors including tumor size (>3cm),
59 microvascular invasion, differentiation degree and serum AFP>400 ng/mL. Neoadjuvant
60

1
2 studies provide a unique opportunity to better understand what factors are associated with
3 response to immunotherapy or lack thereof. Pretreatment biopsy should be mandatory, and
4 thorough characterization of the tumor immune microenvironment should be built into these
5 trials.
6

7 Liver transplantation is the treatment of choice for HCC within Milan criteria in patients who
8 are not candidates for resection (78) (**Fig.1, Table 4**). These criteria lead to median OS of
9 10 years and recurrence rate of < 20%. In the US it has been accepted that patients with
10 more extensive disease (one nodule between 5-8cm, 2-3 nodules \leq 5cm or 4-5 nodules <
11 3cm with sum of diameters < 8cm) down-staged to Milan criteria are acceptable for
12 transplantation (79). Downstaging is not accepted by European guidelines, although
13 performed in some countries such as Italy. A significant number of patients who enter the
14 waiting list or a down-staging protocol drop out and do not ultimately undergo
15 transplantation. Locoregional therapy using thermal ablation or transarterial
16 chemoembolization have been the modalities traditionally applied to maintain HCC within
17 Milan criteria while awaiting transplant or to down-stage patients to eligibility. With the
18 advent of effective systemic therapies, their role in the pretransplant setting vis-à-vis
19 locoregional treatment warrants exploration in clinical trials. Locoregional treatment should
20 be the control arm, compared to systemic therapy either alone or in combination with
21 locoregional, with the primary endpoint of drop-out / transplantability. Stratification should
22 be according to whether patients were initially within or beyond Milan criteria, or down-
23 staged to Milan, and base-line AFP levels >400ng/ml.
24
25

26
27 Treatment of HCC recurrence following transplantation is largely unstudied. The rate of
28 recurrence in properly selected patients is low (10-20%) and these patients have been
29 routinely excluded from studies of systemic therapies. Tyrosine kinase inhibitors have been
30 shown to be safe and are commonly used in an uncontrolled manner(80). There is
31 considerable reluctance to use immunotherapy with anti-PD-1/L1 antibodies due to reports
32 of treatment-related organ rejection, though there are reports of successful treatment(81).
33 As HCC now accounts for nearly 25% of liver transplants in the US, it is time for trials to be
34 implemented studying treatment of post-transplant HCC recurrence.
35
36

37 Local ablation is the mainstay treatment for nonsurgical candidates with early stage HCC
38 (3,4) (**Fig 1, Table 4**). Tumor size (up to 4-5 cm), number (up to 3 tumors) and location
39 (accessibility with ultrasound, CT or MRI guidance) limit the applicability of percutaneous
40 ablation. Several randomized studies have demonstrated a significant benefit of
41 radiofrequency ablation (RFA) over percutaneous ethanol injection in terms of complete
42 response rate, and time to recurrence(82,83). Consequently, RFA is the standard ablative
43 therapy at early stages (**Table 1**). Median OS with RFA is of 60 months, with a recurrence
44 rate ranging from 50-70% (3,4,82,83). AASLD and EASL guidelines have adopted
45 radiofrequency ablation as front line therapy for single tumors <2cm, but in tumors beyond
46 this threshold resection remains as first treatment option(3,4). Randomized phase III trials
47 are scarce in this arena, and are mostly currently focused on adjuvant therapies to prevent
48 recurrence than in challenging the ablative treatment. Microwave ablation has largely
49 supplanted RFA in the United States(84), whereas ethanol injection is restricted to HCC <
50 2cm in difficult locations. Cryoablation and irreversible electroporation are still under
51 investigation(3,4,85). Clinical benefit associated with the use of thermally-sensitive carriers
52 loaded with liposomal doxorubicin in conjunction with radiofrequency ablation is currently
53 tested in phase III.
54
55

56
57 Overall, the main criteria for trial design in the neo-adjuvant/adjuvant after resection/local
58 ablation or liver transplantation setting are as follows (**Table 1**):
59
60

1
2 1. Target populations for neoadjuvant and adjuvant trials: For resection, trials should include
3 patients meeting current AASLD guidelines, and should not include patients with more
4 advanced HCC, e.g. macrovascular invasion. For transplantation, trials should include
5 patients meeting criteria for listing (i.e., Milan criteria), or meeting established criteria for
6 entry into downstaging protocols. For local ablation the target population should follow
7 AASLD guidelines.
8

9
10 2. Endpoints: The appropriate end-point for adjuvant trials in the setting of either resection
11 or transplant is recurrence-free or time to recurrence. For neo-adjuvant trials, pathological
12 response or 1-yr recurrence can also be considered. For treatments challenging loco-
13 regional therapies, OS remains the primary endpoint, but PFS is also recommended as co-
14 primary end point. Secondary endpoints should at least include objective response rates.
15

16 3. Stratification prior to randomization: Appropriate stratification parameters for
17 neoadjuvant/adjuvant studies in the setting of early-stage HCC should include geographical
18 region, tumor size and number, AFP >400ng/mL, type of curative treatment, and
19 pathological features of high risk (size >3cm, microvascular invasion, differentiation degree
20 and tumor satellites).
21

22
23 4. Control arms: For neoadjuvant/adjuvant studies in the setting of resection, a placebo
24 control arm is appropriate. Adjuvant studies in transplantation should also include placebo
25 controls. Defining the control arm for neoadjuvant studies in transplantation remains
26 problematic as there is no evidence-based standard, but there is a general acceptance of
27 the need to include loco-regional therapies to limit tumor progression in patients awaiting
28 transplant that precludes including placebo or untreated patients. Control arms for devices
29 or drugs challenging local ablation should be radiofrequency. Of note, since RFA has been
30 considered effective in nodules up to 4cm, trials exploring treatments for single nodules
31 beyond this size should consider chemoembolization as the best standard control.
32

33
34 5. Unmet needs: HCC recurrence rates after resection or local ablation are unacceptably
35 high. Key needs include biomarkers to improve case selection, and effective
36 neoadjuvant/adjuvant therapies. With regard to transplantation for HCC key needs include
37 definition of optimal neoadjuvant (waiting list) strategies, and identification of useful
38 biomarkers to refine candidate selection beyond algorithms based on tumor size and
39 number.
40

41 **Trial design and endpoints in intermediate stage HCC**

42
43 TACE was established as the standard of care for intermediate stage HCC in 2002 following
44 the publication of two small, randomized controlled trials for which OS was the primary
45 endpoint (**Table 4**). The first trial, conducted in Barcelona, demonstrated a hazard ratio of
46 0.47 [95% CI 0.25–0.91], $p=0.025$) in favor of TACE, and a 2 year survival of 63% compared
47 with 23% for supportive care(86). In the second, TACE was associated with an
48 improvement in 2 year survival from 11% with supportive care to 31% with TACE, and a
49 reduction in relative risk of death; 0.49 (95% CI, 0.29-0.81; $P = 0.006$)(87). Response using
50 WHO criteria, was evaluated as a secondary endpoint and was shown to be associated with
51 a better survival(86). On the basis of these trials and a subsequent meta-analysis(88), the
52 BCLC algorithm recommends TACE for those with intermediate stage disease HCC defined
53 by liver confined, multinodular disease, in those patients with a performance status of 0,
54 Child Pugh A or B cirrhosis and in the absence of portal vein invasion(3,5) (**Fig 1**).
55 Chemoembolization was subsequently adopted by AASLD and EASL guidelines of
56 management of HCC, and no other therapy has so far replaced this standard of care.
57 However, since 2003(86,88) there have been further innovations, guidelines and
58 therapeutic advances which need to be considered in the design of current and future trials.
59 Finally, radioembolization with Y90 for intermediate HCC has produced positive efficacy
60

1
2 signals coming from phase 2 investigations(89), but they have not been adopted by
3 guidelines awaiting phase 3 positive data for this specific population.
4

5 Eligibility criteria and stratification factors.

6
7 It is increasingly recognized that the BCLC B stage is heterogeneous and this likely
8 accounts for the wide spectrum of reported survival outcomes, which range from 12-48
9 months. Consequently, there have been several proposals to subdivide the BCLC group but
10 to date, none have been widely adopted(90,91). Additionally, patients who have a
11 performance status of 1 but otherwise conform to the BCLC criteria, are routinely treated
12 with TACE, and many clinicians regard Child-Pugh B disease as a relative contraindication.
13 Applicability of TACE in BCLC-B is 50%, with the excluded patients having relative
14 contraindications for the procedure due to advanced liver dysfunction or technical
15 issues(92). Recent large RCTs have included patients with PS 0-1, Child-Pugh A, and
16 absence of portal vein thrombosis (**Table 1,2**)(93–96). Stratification factors have been less
17 consistent with the exception of AFP for which a threshold of 400ng/ml has been commonly
18 applied. Composite and fully objective prognostic systems may provide a more feasible and
19 consistent method by which to stratify patients. The ALBI score allocates a grade based on
20 bilirubin and albumin and provides a more objective measure of liver function as compared
21 with Child-Pugh class(97). A direct comparison between ALBI and Child Pugh has shown
22 that the ALBI grade 1 is 92% Child-Pugh A5, ALBI 2 spans a wide range from A5 to B9 and
23 ALBI 3 is B7 and above(98). However, tumor characteristics such as size and AFP are also
24 prognostic and this has been addressed by the HAP score which provides a four class
25 prognostic system using bilirubin, albumin, tumour size and AFP as categorical
26 variables(99). The HAP score has been validated in the TACE-treated population, most
27 recently within a cohort of 3000 patients(100). Applying the HAP score resulted in four
28 distinct groups with survival ranging from 33 months for HAP A to 12 months for HAP D.
29 HAP appears to be a simple and robust stratification factor that might be incorporated into
30 TACE trials
31
32
33
34

35 TACE procedure

36
37 The TACE technique provides another source of heterogeneity and potential bias(101).
38 There remains no consensus regarding the optimal embolic particle, the role of lipiodol or
39 the type of chemotherapy used. Indeed, there are no trials demonstrating the superiority of
40 TACE over bland particle embolization (TAE) and a meta-analysis of five trials including 582
41 patients showed no difference in survival(102). It is unlikely that further technical innovation
42 to the TACE procedure will result in significantly improved outcomes and the future
43 generation of TACE trials will continue to evaluate the combination of TACE and systemic
44 therapy or to compare TACE with systemic therapy. In both cases, TACE will be the control
45 arm and it is important that this is standardized. To achieve this, some of the recent
46 randomized trials have mandated use of drug-eluting beads (DEB TACE)(93,94). Trials
47 comparing DEB TACE with conventional TACE (cTACE) have failed to show a survival
48 benefit but systemic toxicity from chemotherapy is reduced with DEB TACE(103) (104). If
49 technique is not standardized, stratification according to center is an alternative way to
50 reduce bias. Another area of contention is the schedule of TACE administration. In clinical
51 practice, TACE is usually performed on demand according to radiological response rather
52 than according to a fixed interval, and it is reasonable to recapitulate this in clinical trials.
53 However, an effective systemic therapy may reduce the requirement for TACE. In the
54 TACE-2 trial, there were 18% fewer TACE procedures performed in 12 months in the
55 sorafenib arm compared with the placebo arm(93), and in the Oriental trial, the median
56 number of procedures was 3.2 versus 3.7 in the orantinib and placebo arm respectively(96).
57 Recording the number of procedures over the first 12 months or the mean number of
58 procedures should be considered as a secondary endpoint for randomized trials of TACE
59
60

1
2 versus TACE plus systemic therapy. In this sense, the reduction in frequency and number
3 of TACE procedures may have implications for health economics and preservation of liver
4 function.
5

6 Response assessment

7
8 Radiological response is an important indicator of therapeutic activity and can be a
9 surrogate marker of long-term outcomes. Response assessment has been addressed in the
10 next section, but few concepts regarding loco-regional therapies are summarized here. In
11 TACE-related population, mRECIST demonstrated a higher response rate compared with
12 RECIST 1.1(105). Moreover, there was a significant association between survival and
13 overall response according to mRECIST but not with RECIST 1.1. The association between
14 mRECIST response and survival has subsequently been confirmed in multiple other studies
15 and a recent meta-analysis of seven studies including 1357 patients reported a hazard ratio
16 for survival of 0.39 (95% CI; 0.26,0.61) for those with mRECIST response(106).
17 Unfortunately, not all the recently reported phase 3 studies reported response and only
18 TACE-2 ascertained response by both RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST. Best response by
19 RECIST 1.1 was higher than first response but still less than response by mRECIST.
20 Guidelines recommend capturing response as per mRECIST in clinical practice and both
21 RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST as secondary endpoints trials targeting intermediate stage
22 tumors(3).
23
24
25

26 Primary endpoints

27
28 In recent trials, OS for intermediate stage patients receiving TACE was of 21-33 months(93–
29 96) (**Table 2**). Over the past 10 years, there have been major advances in systemic therapy
30 and many patients now transition from TACE to first and increasingly second line systemic
31 therapy. In TACE-2, patients were unblinded on progression and 36% of those on placebo
32 subsequently received sorafenib(93). Similarly, in the BRISK TA trial, 21% of placebo
33 treated patients had post-progression systemic therapy (95) trial, and in the ORIENTAL trial,
34 66% of patients in the placebo arm received post-study therapy (96). Use of post-
35 progression therapy may confound OS as an endpoint and increases the duration of follow-
36 up required to meet the survival endpoint. To address this, a variety of surrogate endpoints
37 have been proposed including progression free survival (PFS), time to progression (TTP),
38 time to disease progression (TTDP), time to extrahepatic spread and vascular invasion
39 (TTES/VI) and time to unTACEable progression (TTUP). Recent trials reporting these
40 potential surrogates in addition to survival has allowed evaluation of their performance. The
41 BRISK TA trial reported a promising hazard ratio of 0.61 for TTP but the trial missed its
42 primary endpoint for survival (HR 0.9)(95). Overall, the correlation coefficient of TTP and
43 OS is 0.77. A major limitation of TTP is that it fails to capture death, which is an important
44 indication of toxicity as well as lack of efficacy. By contrast, PFS, which is the most
45 commonly applied surrogate endpoint used in oncology, captures disease progression and
46 death, and has been reported to correlate with OS in the TACE 2 trial. Novel composite
47 endpoints have also been explored. Time to appearance of extrahepatic spread or vascular
48 invasion (TTES/VI or MVI/EHS) showed a promising HRs of 0.64 and 0.62 in the BRISKT
49 TA and SPACE trial that did not correlate with OS benefit(94,95). Particularly, TTUP (time
50 to untreatable progression), a composite end point defined as failure of response after to
51 treatments, or emerging contraindications for TACE was tested in the SPACE trial, but failed
52 to identified benefits for the combo of TACE plus sorafenib vs TACE (HR: 1.586). Recently,
53 other novel endpoints were incorporated into the TACTICS trial comparing TACE plus
54 sorafenib vs TACE alone(107) (108). In this study, PFS and OS were co-primary end points
55 but progression was defined as unTACEable progression and Response Evaluation Criteria
56 in Cancer of the Liver (RECICL)(109) was used to define progression rather than RECSIT
57 1.1 or mRECIST. Applying these criteria, PFS was superior in the combination arm
58
59
60

(HR=0.59; 95% CI, 0.41 to 0.87; p=0.006) but further follow-up is required to establish whether this translates into a survival benefit. In the meantime, for RCT testing devices alone or in combination with systemic therapies it is recommended that PFS should be the co-primary endpoint along with OS, while ORR should be included as a secondary endpoint (**Table 1 & 2**). Additional composite endpoints can be included as exploratory endpoints until they are properly validated.

A challenging question for the future is how TACE compares to systemic therapy. TACE was developed at a time when systemic therapy was virtually non-existent. With the advent of first, second and even third line systemic therapies and achieved OS beyond 2 years in selected patients receiving two lines of therapy(23), systemic therapy can be discussed not only following TACE but as an alternative to TACE. This is particularly relevant as transarterial therapies impair liver function and may render many patients no longer eligible for systemic therapy. For patients with limited tumor burden and nodules accessible super-selectively by TACE, locoregional TACE may still be the best approach. In contrast, patients exceeding the up-to-seven criteria may be better suited for clinical trials exploring upfront systemic therapy(110). To answer this question a head-to-head comparison of TACE vs. systemic therapy (or vs. TACE plus systemic therapy) in defined patient subgroups will be needed, making the endpoint discussion even more complex.

Radiologic assessment of response

The RECIST criteria are the standard imaging approach for assessing tumor response in oncology. The original RECIST panel acknowledged that amendments could be needed for tumors with unique complexities and for evaluating non-cytotoxic drugs(111). Both issues are highly relevant for HCC: (a) the association of HCC with an underlying chronic liver disease complicates image assessment, since pathologic and hemodynamic changes in cirrhosis and extrahepatic manifestations of chronic liver disease may mimic tumor progression; (b) nonsurgical treatments for HCC, including loco-regional and systemic therapies, achieve improvements in survival without inducing sizeable tumor shrinkage, frustrating attempts to capture tumor response using standard RECIST metrics(12).

In 2010, modified RECIST (mRECIST) criteria for HCC were proposed(21) addressing confounding factors related to cirrhosis using specific amendments for the assessment of lymph nodes, ascites, portal vein thrombosis, and newly detected hepatic nodules (**Table 5**). These recommendations were made primarily to prevent “overcalls” of progressive disease. In addition, the absence of substantial tumor shrinkage was addressed by introducing the concept of “viable tumor” in the measurement of intrahepatic HCC lesions, enabling the classification of treatment induced intratumoral necrosis in the absence of significant changes in overall tumor diameter as objective responses (21).

During the past decade, mRECIST for HCC has been used extensively in HCC clinical research and its performance has been reviewed elsewhere(27).The proposed mRECIST refinements for assessment of lymph nodes, ascites, portal vein thrombosis, and newly detected hepatic nodules, were progressively incorporated into radiology charters of HCC clinical trials, even when the criteria were named RECIST or RECIST 1.1(112). This process homogenized radiologic interpretation of these findings, improving consistency and reliability in assessment of tumor progression. Consequently, recent studies reported similar results for standard RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST in assessment of progression-driven endpoints, such as PFS and TTP(7,8). Currently, the main difference between standard RECIST and mRECIST is the approach to measurement of intrahepatic lesions, which primarily affects the ability to capture an objective response (OR). Use of the mRECIST viable tumor concept results in identification of 2-3 times more responders than standard

1
2 RECISt, not only in patients receiving loco-regional treatments but also those receiving
3 systemic therapies(7,32).
4

5 With the advent of immune checkpoint inhibitors, changes to the RECISt model have been
6 proposed(35,36,113–115). Response to immunotherapy can manifest after imaging
7 features that meet current RECISt criteria for progression. Pseudo-progression has been
8 defined as increase in tumor size of existing lesions or the appearance of new lesions,
9 followed by a response(35). Differentiating pseudo-progression from true progression is a
10 challenging but important: while early discontinuation of an effective drug is not desirable,
11 continued long-term treatment with a non-effective drug past true progression might delay
12 the initiation of potentially effective therapies. Pseudo-progression has been described as a
13 marginal event in phase III investigations with anti PDL1/PD1 check point inhibitors in HCC.
14 The incidence of this phenomenon with anti- CTLA-4 and other inhibitors is unknown.
15
16

17 Limited information is available on use of immune-related criteria in HCC. In a phase II study
18 of 104 patients who received pembrolizumab in second line after sorafenib, the use of
19 immune-related RECISt (irRECISt) did not affect response rate or time to response as
20 compared to mRECISt; however median PFS was 7.0 months (95% CI, 4.9-8.0) when
21 assessed by irRECISt vs 3.2 months (95% CI, 2.2-4.1) when assessed by mRECISt(116).
22 In phase IIb study(117) investigating a vaccinia virus-based oncolytic immunotherapy -
23 pexastimogene devacirepvec- in advanced HCC changes to mRECISt were implemented
24 because the treatment induces a flare with swelling and edema(118). These changes
25 included the confirmation of progression at 4 weeks, either by further increase in size or
26 additional signs of progression such as emergence of new lesions(117). Overall, to assess
27 response to checkpoint inhibitors or immunotherapies in HCC, evaluation by CT/MRI at 8-
28 12 weeks after treatment can be recommended, as opposed to the usual interval of 6-8
29 weeks for tyrosine kinase inhibitors. This window was used in phase II studies testing
30 nivolumab (12 weeks)(38) and pembrolizumab (9 weeks)(116), where the phenomenon of
31 pseudo-progression was reported as a marginal event.
32
33
34
35

36 **Design and endpoints for systemic therapies in HCC**

37 Standard of care with systemic therapies in HCC

38
39 Current estimates suggest that around 50% of HCC patients will receive effective systemic
40 therapies during their lifespan(3,119,120). Several trials have tried to show survival benefits
41 of systemic agents in advanced disease (**Table 2,4**), a traditionally challenging setting due
42 to the limited efficacy and high toxicity of conventional systemic chemotherapy(121–124).
43 Randomized studies for anti-estrogen therapies also failed to prove any clinical efficacy
44 (125). In 2008, the landmark SHARP trial assessing the multi-tyrosine kinase inhibitor
45 sorafenib was the first to significantly improve survival with manageable adverse
46 events(11). Afterwards, five treatments have succeeded, while several other drugs failed
47 (126,127),(22),(128)(129)(122)(130)(131)(132)(133)-. In first line, atezolizumab (anti-PD-L1
48 inhibitor) plus bevacizumab (VEGFA inhibitor) have shown to be superior to sorafenib in a
49 recently reported RCT(134). The study was stopped at the first interim analysis by showing
50 a HR of 0.58 for OS (median not reached for combo vs 13.2 mo for sorafenib) and HR of
51 0.59 for PFS (median 6.8 mo for combo vs 4.3 for sorafenib). These results will pose this
52 combination as standard of care first-line therapy for advanced HCC. Second, lenvatinib
53 (multikinase inhibitor: VEGFRs, FGFRs, RET, KIT and PDGFRA) has become an option
54 equal to sorafenib, after the positive result of the non-inferiority REFLECT study (HR of 0.92;
55 95% CI 0.79-1.06) (**Table 2, Fig 2A**). Because this trial excludes patients with main portal
56 vein invasion, tumor involvement >50% of the liver and clear bile duct invasion, the relative
57 benefit of lenvatinib vs sorafenib in these patients remain uncertain.
58
59
60

1
2 In second line, the phase III trial testing regorafenib (VEGFRs, PDGFRs, KIT and Tie2)
3 improved OS compared to placebo from 7.8 to 10.6 months (HR of 0.63) in patients who
4 progressed and were tolerant to sorafenib(8). The sequential treatment sorafenib-
5 regorafenib led to a median OS of 26 months compared to 19 months for sorafenib-placebo
6 (23). These results need to be taken with caution since they will not apply to all patients
7 receiving sorafenib, but only those able to receive the sequential treatment. The
8 CELESTIAL study, showed median OS of 10.2 months with cabozantinib (VEGFRs, MET
9 and AXL) vs. 8 months with placebo (HR of 0.76)(9); and the REACH-2 study, where
10 ramucirumab (VEGFR2 monoclonal antibody) provided a median OS of 8.5 months in
11 patients with AFP \geq 400 ng/ml vs. 7.3 months with placebo (HR of 0.71)(10,135). AFP is
12 well-known for its independent prognostic capacity in HCC(136). As such, REACH-2 was
13 the first and only positive phase III trial in a biomarker-driven population of patients with
14 HCC (**Fig 2B**). In contrast, 3 phase III trials testing internal radiation with Y-90 for advanced
15 HCC, either as single treatment [SARAH(137) and SIRveNIB(138)] or in combination Y-90
16 with sorafenib(139) did not meet the primary endpoint of improved OS compared to
17 sorafenib (**Fig. 2A**). As a result, Y-90 was discouraged for the management of advanced
18 HCC in the EASL guidelines (**Fig. 1**)(3). Despite appealing ORR of 15% with durable
19 response for nivolumab and 18% for pembrolizumab, phase III trials comparing the former
20 with sorafenib(24) in front-line and the latter with placebo in second-line resulted negative.
21 Particularly, the latter trial showed a HR of 0.78 with upper boundary of 95CI below 1, but
22 the pre-specified p value ($p < 0.0178$) was not hit(41).

23 Trial design in advanced HCC

24
25 Overall survival remains as the primary end-point for advanced HCC research(1,3) (**Table**
26 **4**). It has driven clinical research in HCC for more than 40 years and has been the gold-
27 standard for measuring benefits at all stages of the disease. Nonetheless, the emergence
28 of several effective drugs in advanced HCC has exposed the need for alternative end-points
29 that can capture the benefits of a treatment before they can be diluted by post-progression
30 therapy(3). Progression-free survival (PFS), time to progression (TTP) and objective
31 response rate (ORR) are now emerging as tools to a) identify early strong signals of efficacy
32 that led to accelerated regulatory approval (particularly ORR and PFS)(6,88) and b) test
33 interventions which benefit can be assessed prior additional sequential drugs received
34 beyond progression might mask the actual benefit of the tested drug. In this sense, a recent
35 investigation analyzing 21 reported phase III studies(7–11,121–123,126–
36 131,133,135,137,138,140) in advanced HCC proposed PFS (with a restrictive hazard ratio
37 criteria ≤ 0.6) as a surrogate end-point for survival when testing kinase inhibitors or
38 monoclonal antibodies, and thus as potential primary end-point in advanced HCC trials(3)
39 (**Table 4**). Subsequently, six phase III studies have been released that confirm the
40 hypothesis: two positive studies, one testing atezolizumab plus bevacizumab vs
41 sorafenib(134) and the second sorafenib plus hepatic arterial infusion of Folfox vs
42 sorafenib(141), both show HR for PFS ≤ 0.6 and significant survival benefits, and four
43 negative trials for survival testing nivolumab(24), sorafenib plus pravastatin(142), sorafenib
44 plus doxorubicin(143) and pembrolizumab(41), in which the HR for PFS in all cases was
45 > 0.6 (**Fig 3**). Considering the special circumstances of the 2 negative trials testing anti-PD1
46 inhibitors, we should be cautious when applying this rule for testing immune therapies as
47 single agents or for combinations of immune regimens.

48
49 Trial design in HCC has been evolving, and new challenges emerge as novel therapies
50 become standard of care. Although there might be distinct approaches to trial design in
51 HCC, there has been a consensus on the basic principles that have been recently reported
52 in guidelines and critical appraisals (3,139,144,145). The key points are summarized below
53 (**Table 1**):

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

1. *Phase II and Phase III trials:* The panel recommends assessing drugs in the setting of randomized phase II studies before moving to phase III trials. Nonetheless, for some therapies, a large single arm phase II with a strong signal of efficacy might suffice to justify a phase III study. Thresholds for defining signals of efficacy are not clearly established, but for molecular therapies the ORR should likely be above 20-30%(146).

2. *Selection of the target population:* Clinical trials should consider BCLC staging system, Child-Pugh class and ECOG performance status for selection of the target population. In principle, for advanced HCC almost all RCT include patients with well-preserved liver function (Child-Pugh A) and good performance status (ECOG 0 and 1).

3. *Control arm:* The control arm of randomized phase II and III studies should be the standard of care established according to guidelines. Although sorafenib and lenvatinib in front-line (7,11) and regorafenib (8), cabozantinib(9) and ramucirumab (in patients with AFP \geq 400 ng/ml)(10) are accepted as standard of care, this will change when atezolizumab plus bevacizumab are approved by regulatory agencies. At that time, this combination will become the standard of care for comparison in front-line, and subsequent lines of therapy will move downwards. Double-blind trials (as opposed to open label trials) are recommended to prevent selection and allocation biases.

4. *Stratification for prognostic factors prior to randomization:* Stratification is critical in randomized studies to warrant balanced comparisons. For advanced HCC the recommendation is as follows: region, macrovascular invasion, extrahepatic spread, AFP > 400 ng/ml and ECOG 0 vs 1-2. Etiology should also be considered as studies with sorafenib and atezolizumab and bevacizumab suggest an influence of this factor in response.

5. *End points: Overall survival:* For systemic therapies the primary endpoint should be OS, and PFS is proposed as co-primary endpoint. To date, all regular FDA and EMA drug conventional approvals in advanced HCC were based upon improvements in OS. *Surrogate endpoints:* OS has limitations as a sole endpoint in cancer research: it might require a long follow-up to capture adequate numbers and can be affected by sequential therapies. Thus, surrogate endpoints that are more practical for trial execution are needed. There are no optimal surrogate endpoints able to recapitulate OS in HCC, and thus clinical practice guidelines do not recommend ORR, TTP and PFS as primary endpoints in phase III investigations(144,145). ORR is an independent predictor of OS in three phase II and III trials(7,123,127), but is still considered a suboptimal primary end-point for phase III investigations. Nonetheless, ORR of 16-18% resulted in accelerated FDA approval of nivolumab and pembrolizumab in second line treatment of advanced HCC(38,39). PFS was formerly discarded as a primary end-point of phase III investigations due to the concept of competing risk of survival (competing between death due to tumor progression and due to the natural history of cirrhosis)(12). However, this competing risk drawback has been reduced by the universal selection of Child-Pugh A patients for these investigations, thus reducing the 1-yr risk of death due to decompensation to <5%. Stringent criteria for accepting PFS as primary endpoint have been proposed (HR \leq 0.6) and it is adopted in the current guidelines (**Table 1**), but this point is still controversial. Regarding ORR, use of both RECIST1.1. and mRECIST are proposed for the assessment of response in HCC treated with systemic therapy, whereas changes in serum biomarker levels (*i.e.* AFP levels) are not supported(3).

6. *Magnitude of benefit:* In HCC, there is no consensus on what absolute survival benefit (or magnitude of benefit in OS according to HR) is clinically relevant. Reported thresholds of OS with HR <0.8 are sound for capturing the benefit of patients in advanced HCC trials(20). This figure needs to be taken with caution, since other variables can impact

1
2 the overall benefit of a given drug, such as quality of life, safety profile and availability of
3 alternative therapies in distinct countries.
4

5 7. Checkpoint inhibitors and other immunotherapies have unique features and
6 generally produce higher ORR and longer duration of response, as measured by
7 RECIST1.1. The values of mRECIST and irRECIST in assessing checkpoint inhibitor
8 mediated responses remain investigational.
9

10 11 **Immune treatments: Overview of results and specific endpoints**

12
13 The initial clinical experience with checkpoint inhibitors in HCC was with a phase II study
14 testing tremelimumab, a CTLA-4 antibody leading to objective response of 18% of patients
15 and time to tumor progression was 6.5 months (147). Immunotherapy has drawn significant
16 attention in HCC with the approval of nivolumab and pembrolizumab by the FDA based on
17 promising results obtained in different phase II studies(38,39). A phase I/II open-label, non-
18 comparative trial (CheckMate 040) assessing the efficacy of nivolumab in advanced HCC
19 reported objective response rate (ORR) of 20% in the dose-expansion phase (n=214) and
20 15% in the dose-escalation phase (n=48). Duration of response (DOR) was 9.9 months and
21 median PFS as 4.0 months in the dose-expansion cohort. Nivolumab treatment was well
22 tolerated (38). Pembrolizumab, another PD1 specific antibody, was tested in phase II in
23 patients with HCC progressing or intolerant to sorafenib (Keynote 224). Pembrolizumab was
24 effective and tolerable with one complete response (CR) and 17 PR out of 104 patients. The
25 median progression free survival was 4.9 months, and median OS was 12.9 months(39).
26 Camrelizumab, another fully humanized anti-PD-1 antibody, was evaluated in a randomized
27 phase 2 trial in Chinese patients with advanced HCC after failure of at least one line of
28 therapy(148). The ORR was 13.8% and the 6-month OS was 74.7%.
29
30
31

32 Nivolumab and pembrolizumab failed in phase III trials (**Fig. 2A-B**). Pembrolizumab was
33 tested in a randomized, double-blind phase III trial against placebo in 443 patients with HCC
34 that progressed on or were intolerant to sorafenib (Keynote-240). The co-primary endpoints
35 of PFS and OS failed to reach the prespecified level of statistical significance although
36 median OS was prolonged from 10.6 to 13.9 months (HR: 0.781; 95% CI: 0.611-0.998; P =
37 .0238)(149). Nivolumab was tested against sorafenib in a Phase 3 trial (CheckMate 459),
38 but did not reach survival differences for superiority (24). In this RCT including around 750
39 patients, median OS for nivolumab was 16.4mo vs 14.7mo for the sorafenib arm (HR: 0.85;
40 95%CI 0.72-1.02). Objective response rate was 15% and 7%, respectively.
41
42

43 Anti-CTLA4 antibodies have been tested as single agent(147) or in combination with
44 locoregional therapies(150) and are under investigation in combination with anti-PD1
45 drugs(151). In this regard, very recently the combination ipilimumab and nivolumab received
46 FDA approval based on a ORR of 31% (40). Currently phase III trials are ongoing which
47 either test the combination of two immune checkpoint inhibitors, immune checkpoint
48 inhibitors plus TACE, immune checkpoint blockade in the adjuvant setting or immune
49 checkpoint inhibitors plus vascular targeting agents(152). While the overall response to
50 immune checkpoint inhibition (15-20%) may not be as dramatic as initially hoped, complete
51 responses are seen in a small number of cases in almost every trial. This observation
52 together with the recent results from two phase III trial testing anti-PD1 antibodies in the
53 first- and second-line setting rise up the important question of what endpoint to use in future
54 trials. While OS remains the “gold standard” it should be noted that HCC is not the only
55 cancer where this question is being asked. Due to the unique mechanism of action of
56 immune checkpoint inhibitors(153), new endpoints such as ORR and surrogate biomarkers
57 have been tested and new immune related RECIST criteria devised to capture distinctive
58
59
60

1
2 patterns and timing of response to immunotherapy(35,115). Finally, while immunological
3 endpoints may be helpful as surrogates(154), they cannot be recommended at this time.
4

5 A systematic review and meta-analysis of 87 phase 2 trials with the foal of defining the most
6 appropriate primary endpoint in phase 2 trials of immune checkpoint inhibitors for advanced
7 solid cancers has been reported. Correlations between ORR odds ratios and hazard ratios
8 (HRs) for PFS and OS were examined for randomized comparisons. Within checkpoint-
9 inhibitor treatment arms, correlations of ORR with 6-month PFS and 12-month OS rates
10 were examined. All analyses were weighted by trial size. Multivariable models to predict 6-
11 month PFS and 12-month OS rates from ORR were developed and their performance
12 validated in an independent sample of trials. The authors demonstrated that ORR correlated
13 poorly with OS and recommended 6-month PFS rate as an endpoint for future phase 2
14 studies,(155). Thus, PFS endpoint can also be recommended for studies evaluating
15 immune checkpoint inhibitors in HCC (**Table 1**).
16
17
18

19 **Biomarker-Driven Trials in HCC: Results and Endpoints**

20
21 Recent clinical trials in advanced HCC are demonstrating that the sequential use of systemic
22 agents is changing the natural history of the disease. Still, these results are incremental
23 and the incorporation of biomarker driven strategies have generally been unsuccessful.
24 Unlike other solid tumors such as breast, lung, colon cancer, and others, where therapeutic
25 decisions are driven by an understanding of a patient given molecular features, in HCC a
26 “one-size-fits-all approach” is still the usual approach to patients. This applies to all therapies
27 so far accepted in guidelines, except for ramucirumab.
28

29
30 Biomarkers provide the distinct possibility of supplementing existing anatomic and/or
31 pathologic information to provide a more accurate assessment of prognosis (to be used for
32 patient stratification) and/or to identify individuals who are more likely to respond to specific
33 therapy (predictive of response) (156–158) There is a plethora of literature on the different
34 predictive biomarker validation designs (159). The NCI defines a biomarker as *a biological*
35 *molecule found in blood, other body fluids, or tissues that is a sign of a normal or abnormal*
36 *process, or of a condition or disease*. A biomarker may be used to determine how well the
37 body responds to a treatment for a disease or condition (160).
38

39
40 In HCC, numerous studies have defined the molecular heterogeneity of the disease and
41 specific genetic alterations and subtypes. These data are fertile ground for testing biomarker
42 hypotheses as both prognostic and/ or predictive markers in prospective studies but so far
43 these data have largely been ignored in clinical development in HCC (6). To date, two
44 phase 3 studies have tested biomarker driven approaches. Firstly, tivantinib, a small
45 molecule inhibitor of the hepatocyte growth factor/ c-MET was evaluated in patients that had
46 progressed on sorafenib and had elevated expression of c-MET in their tissue. This was a
47 placebo-controlled study that yielded negative results(131). The possible reasons for failure
48 highlight the challenges with this approach including: 1) validity of the target, 2) robustness
49 of the assay for patient selection, and 3) ability of the agent to inhibit the target successfully
50 in tumor tissue. The latter may be a plausible reason for failure of the trial, considering that
51 the anti-MET activity of this drug has been challenged in experimental studies(161).
52 Conversely, ramucirumab, which initially failed in an “all comers” study(162), demonstrated
53 an improvement in OS for selected patients with AFP \geq 400 ng/ ml. Proof-of-concept studies
54 testing small molecule inhibitors of FGFR-4 using biomarker enriched populations based
55 on FGF-19 expression have been reported with ORR of 16% (163).
56
57

58
59 Recently, immunotherapy approaches have garnered high interest in the management of
60 HCC and the PD-1 directed antibodies nivolumab and pembrolizumab received accelerated
approval by the US FDA(38,39). However, unlike in other cancers, PD-1 and / or PD-L1

1
2 expression has not correlated with outcome. This has likely contributed to the recent
3 negative results from phase 3 studies with these agents(149). Ongoing work is focused on
4 further refining biomarker development evaluating other inflammatory markers including
5 incorporation of more broad based assessment tools such as an immune-enriched
6 signature identified through molecular profiling of HCC (164).
7

8
9 Several studies have incorporated biomarker assessments into the trial design. While tissue
10 collection is often optional and therefore limited, serum assays have served to generate
11 hypotheses for further study. In the pivotal SHARP study, baseline levels of angiopoietin 2
12 and VEGF were prognostic but not predictive of benefit from sorafenib(136). Relevant
13 biomarkers in the FGF and VEGF pathways were analyzed in the REFLECT study and
14 identified differences in the modulation of these pathways by lenvatinib and sorafenib, but
15 no biomarker could define a group receiving differential benefit from either compound(165).
16 In the REACH-2 study, decreases in AFP correlated with better outcome from
17 ramucirumab(10). Novel study designs evaluating biomarker assessments pre-and post-
18 treatment are being performed. These so-called “pre-surgical” studies are designed to
19 acquire tissue at baseline, from patients with resectable tumors, expose the patient to a
20 novel agent for a short period, and then collect tissue at the time of resection. Molecular
21 studies comparing the pre-and post-treatment tissue provide an opportunity to understand
22 the effects of novel therapeutics on relevant pathways in the tumor. These studies can
23 provide critical information that could guide a patient selection strategy in conventional
24 efficacy studies. One such study with nivolumab is producing interesting insights into tumor
25 characteristics that may correlate to response to this drug(166).
26
27

28
29 Despite the recent successes in clinical trials of new agents for HCC, the improvements in
30 survival are modest. Throughout cancer medicine, the largest impacts in outcomes have
31 been by biomarker driven drug development. Examples include ALK(167) and EGFR(168)
32 testing in lung cancer, HER-2(169) and estrogen receptor(170) testing in breast cancer, c-
33 KIT testing in gastrointestinal tumors(171), and BCR-ABL testing in chronic myelogenous
34 leukemia(172). By enriching for the population most likely to benefit, studies can be
35 conducted with smaller numbers of patients and minimize risk for failure. While historically
36 predictive marker testing is done on tumor tissue obtained by biopsy, newer technologies
37 are now allowing biomarker detection in peripheral blood. The practice of not obtaining
38 biopsies for diagnosis of HCC, the fact that most common driver mutations in HCC are non-
39 actionable and the observation that only 25% of HCCs harbor at least one actionable
40 mutation(172), in contrast to the majority of solid tumors(173), have hindered development
41 of biomarker driven precision treatment to date. Nonetheless, there is now renewed interest
42 in incorporating tissue acquisition into clinical trials, not only in the early part of drug
43 development, but in later studies as well. Clinical trial designs for predictive marker
44 validation are inherently complex and require data from a randomized controlled clinical trial
45 (RCT)(153). There is a plethora of literature on the different predictive biomarker validation
46 designs, including articles that specifically focus on the statistical and clinical properties and
47 assumptions of these different trial designs (156).
48
49

50
51 Trial design in the precision medicine era require a platform for biomarker profiling
52 (173)(174). The ultimate clinical utility of a biomarker will depend on: 1) its added value in
53 every patient in the context of the markers prevalence, 2) its incremental benefit for
54 treatment selection when considering the added costs and complexity induced by the use
55 of the marker, and 3) the added effectiveness of the new treatment option in all patients
56 versus biomarker-defined subgroups.
57
58
59
60

Liquid biopsy in early HCC detection, prediction of response and tumor relapse

Liquid biopsy entails the analysis of tumor components released by cancer cells to biological fluids such as blood, saliva or cerebrospinal fluid(175). The concept includes the analysis of actual cancer cells (i.e., circulating tumor cells [CTCs]), fragments of DNA from necrotic or apoptotic cancer cells (i.e., circulating tumor DNA [ctDNA]) and extracellular vesicles(176). Compared to conventional tissue biopsies, the main advantages of liquid biopsy using samples from peripheral blood are: 1) it is minimally invasive, which eliminates the complications associated with invasive tissue biopsies; 2) it facilitates sequential sampling, which is crucial to better select therapies in patients receiving multiple lines of treatment; 3) it enables tracking tumor clonal composition in heterogeneous tumors, a feature that allows earlier detection mechanisms of treatment resistance; and 4) it can be implemented as a point-of-care diagnostic. Potential clinical applications include cancer surveillance, early detection of minimal residual disease after curative therapies, prognostic prediction and molecular monitoring of therapeutic response(177). In an early sign of impact on patient care, the FDA recently approved the use of a ctDNA-based test to detect mutations of EGFR in lung cancer patients who are candidates to receive EGFR-based tyrosine kinase inhibitors(178).

In HCC, liquid biopsy has been evaluated for three clinical applications: early HCC detection in the context of surveillance, as a prognostic biomarker after surgical resection and to predict response to systemic therapies. Mutation profiling of ctDNA is feasible and confidently detects tissue mutations in early stage HCC(179). A recent report combining data from ctDNA and protein markers had a sensitivity and specificity of 85% and 93% respectively for the detection of HCC(180). Also, analysis of DNA methylation alterations in ctDNA has high accuracy for HCC diagnosis(55,181). A study that included a gene signature derived from CTCs was able to accurately discriminate between HCC patients and controls(182). Higher CTC count correlates with a greater risk of tumor recurrence after surgical resection(175). There are few studies using liquid biopsy to predict response to systemic therapies in HCC. A retrospective study suggested that HCC patients with ctDNA detectable *VEGFA* DNA amplifications have better outcomes when treated with sorafenib(183). Also, RAS mutations analysis of ctDNA was used to determine eligibility to receive refametinib in a phase 2 clinical trial(184). Thus, there is increasing interest in applying this technology to predict response to systemic therapies.

Quality of life and patient reported outcomes

Systematic capture of the patient perspective can inform the development of new cancer therapies. The U.S. FDA Office of Hematology and Oncology Products (OHOP) has identified symptomatic adverse events (AEs) as a central Patient Reported Outcome (PRO) using the National Cancer Institute's Patient-Reported Outcomes version of the Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events (PRO-CTCAE) to provide a standard yet flexible method to assess symptomatic AEs from the patient perspective(194,195). The FDA's patient focused drug development program has ongoing efforts to improve methods around the collection, analysis and interpretation of PRO data, as well as initiatives to identify patient-friendly language, and leveraging digital health tools. In 2016, the 21st Century Cures Act tasked the FDA to consider the patient-experience in the risk-benefit determination. The FDA draft guidance outlines the use of PRO to assess symptomatic side effects and the core set of clinical outcomes to measure in cancer trials, including design considerations and assessment frequency(11).

The purpose of measuring quality of life (QOL) should be to compare outcomes between treatment arms, even if one is a placebo. There are two methods of measuring QOL specific to HCC: the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Quality of Live

1
2 Questionnaire (EORTC QLQ)(185) and the Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy-
3 Hepatobiliary (FACT-Hep)(186) questionnaire. Few studies have adequately assessed
4 PRO using these tools in HCC research, a recommendation that is endorsed by the panel.
5

6 Most phase III trials for HCC were designed primarily to compare two different treatments
7 in patients with similar stage disease. For example, one study compared QOL after
8 resection with QOL following radiofrequency ablation(187). As expected, QOL was much
9 better after radiofrequency ablation than after resection, and remained superior up to 36
10 months post-treatment. In addition, QOL following radioembolization has been compared
11 with TACE(188). In this study, there was no overall difference in QOL between the two
12 groups, but the sample size was small. Despite the lack of statistically significant
13 differences, in the TACE group QOL was decreased at 2 and 4 weeks, whereas in the
14 radioembolization group some aspects of QOL actually improved. Similarly, QOL measures
15 favoring Y-90 vs sorafenib have been claimed to support the former treatment in three
16 negative RCT, the SARAH trial (134) and the SIRveNIB trial (135) and SORAMIC trials.
17 However, since indication of a drug/device should be based upon the primary endpoint
18 (survival), no actual indication can be claimed if the result is negative for the primary end-
19 point. Finally, the SHARP trial demonstrating survival benefit of sorafenib also tested time-
20 to-symptomatic progression — as measured by the Functional Assessment of Cancer
21 Therapy–Hepatobiliary Symptom Index 8 (FHSI8) — as a co-primary endpoint. The
22 negative results of this end-point contrasted with the survival benefit obtained by sorafenib,
23 thus challenging the accuracy of the tool used(11). More recently, patient reported
24 outcomes have been tested in the setting of phase III investigations showing significant
25 results in positive RCT in advanced HCC. This is the case of lenvatinib compared to
26 sorafenib, or atezolizumab plus bevacizumab compared to sorafenib, where the tested arms
27 showed better QoL parameters compared with the standard of care. The panel encourage
28 the integration of these endpoints in all investigations in HCC (**Table 6**).
29
30
31
32
33

34 **Implications of trial design in Asia**

35 Differences between AASLD, EASL, and Asian guidelines

36 Recommendations in western guidelines (AASLD and EASL) are based upon evidence from
37 clinical trials (**Table 4**), while Asian guidelines integrate evidence with expert consensus
38 and clinical practice. Applicability of those guidelines varies according to region and
39 treatment stage (47). Asian guidelines (189) in general recommend ablation or resection for
40 very early-stage (stage 0) disease, but differ from western guidelines in the
41 recommendations at other stages of disease. For instance, TACE or yttrium-90 (Y90-SIRT)
42 are recommended for single large tumors, and systemic therapies -i.e Folfox(105), or
43 hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy - are recommended for advanced stages, along with
44 liver transplantation – mostly living donor transplantation . Similarly, in Asia patients with
45 portal vein invasion and well-preserved liver function might be considered for TACE,
46 resection or radiotherapy (190–194).
47
48
49

50 Specificities of trial design in Asia

51 Considering all these guidelines, trial design in Asia has some specificities. For instance,
52 resection in very high-risk patients (multinodular tumors, macrovascular invasion) is
53 common in Asia, and thus adjuvant trials might consider this indication with a recurrence-
54 free survival endpoint. Similarly, studies exploring the role of systemic therapies plus TACE
55 in patients with advanced stages might also be considered in Asia with a primary end point
56 of PFS. Weather these approaches should be tested in specific trials or as part of global
57 trials needs further consideration.
58
59
60

Future prospects

The dawn of a new era: combination therapies

When the report of the first AASLD conference on Design and Endpoints of Clinical Trials in HCC was published(12), the field was still heady with excitement from the first positive trial of a systemic agent for advanced HCC, which established sorafenib as the first FDA approved systemic therapy for HCC (11). However, enthusiasm was also tempered by the subsequent negative results of trials of sorafenib as adjuvant therapy after resection or ablation (STORM)(76) or in combination with TACE (SPACE)(94). It was recognized then that a unique challenge is posed by the combination of underlying chronic liver disease with a very heterogeneous and variably aggressive primary HCC. It is therefore important that treatment strategies account for both the liver disease and malignancy, and thus variables capturing both diseases should be considered in the publication of clinical trials for HCC (**Table 7**). Discussions at the previous AASLD Endpoints conference set the framework for subsequent attempts to bring additional agents to approval, which were met with uniformly disappointing results over the next several years, with trial failures due to unacceptable toxicity or inadequate efficacy(12). While disappointing, these failures led to robust examination of the optimal approach to trial design and catalyzed a more rigorous approach that contributed to the successes in phase 3 HCC clinical trials. With the positive results and approvals of lenvatinib, regorafenib, cabozantinib and ramucirumab based on phase 3 studies, and of the checkpoint inhibitors nivolumab and pembrolizumab based on convincing phase 2 data, we appear to be poised for success in the next most logical treatment paradigms using combination therapies. Indeed, the recent positive phase III study demonstrating superior OS for atezolizumab plus bevacizumab vs sorafenib(134), represents the dawn of a new era of combination therapies in all stages of HCC research (**Fig 1**). This combination is certainly *first in-class* of this approach. Whether other combinations may become *best-in-class* will depend upon the ability of specific TKI and/or MAb to transform “cold tumors”, which are primary resistant to immunotherapy, into “hot-immune-active tumors”, allowing checkpoint inhibitors to optimally unleash immune attack against cancer cells(195–197) .

The advent of combination therapies achieving response rates of 30% and survival rates above 20 months in advanced HCC provides the rationale for testing these combinations in earlier HCC stages. Currently, phase III trials testing combination therapies are ongoing for early stages (neo-adjuvant or adjuvant approaches), intermediate HCC (in combination with TACE or in comparison to TACE) and in front-line trials for advanced HCC (**Table 7**). It is conceivable that systemic therapies may be incorporated in all areas of HCC management in the near future. Thus, the up-dated target population and endpoints described here should be valuable in this endeavor.

Understanding tumor biology remains critical: tissue and blood samples are needed

It is likely that the next key advances in HCC therapy will emanate from an improved understanding of HCC biology and the ability to predict the response of specific HCCs subgroups to particular therapies. Until now, most HCC therapy has been applied in a biologically indiscriminate fashion. The biological heterogeneity of HCC has been evident for many years, demonstrated by differences in phenotypes, tumor growth rates, numbers of tumor nodules, discrete versus infiltrative appearance, propensity for microvascular or macrovascular invasion, propensity for distant metastasis, and association with elevation of AFP, AFP-L3, DCP and other biomarkers. Apart from the limitations that multifocal, invasive or metastatic disease have placed on application of potentially curative treatments such as surgical resection, liver transplantation, and local ablation, we have only recently begun to incorporate markers of tumor biology into therapeutic decision making. Applications of tumor

1
2 biologic characteristics into therapeutic approaches have been scarce in HCC and mostly
3 focused on using AFP levels for selection policy for transplantation, as an stratification factor
4 in most of trials and finally for selecting candidates to ramucirumab in the management of
5 advanced HCCs in second line.
6

7 With the advent of next generation DNA, RNA and non-coding RNA sequencing and similar
8 genome wide methodologies for copy number variation, methylation and proteomic
9 characterization, we now stand ready to translate information from these technologies to
10 the care of HCC patients, transforming the selection of systemic therapy and the selection
11 of optimal candidates for loco-regional therapies. Results suggesting that *CTNNB1*-mutated
12 HCCs are immune excluded and potentially resistant to immune checkpoint inhibitors(198–
13 200) but potentially susceptible to mTOR inhibitors are an early indication of the potential
14 value of genomics in personalizing HCC therapy. These studies may also provide us with
15 tools for better understanding the recent borderline negative results of phase 3 trials with
16 single agent immune checkpoint inhibitors. Personalization of therapy using molecular and
17 genomic signatures will require integration of molecular subclasses into clinical staging
18 systems, to better guide treatment selection. Optimal treatment selection will depend on the
19 ability to target oncogenic signaling pathways that drive tumorigenesis, tumor progression
20 and metastasis. The development of new preclinical tumor models, including organoids,
21 patient derived xenografts, and syngeneic models that preserve aspects of the immune
22 response will be critical for the testing of novel agents and combinations. Ideally, integration
23 of molecular profiling into the HCC treatment paradigm will require genomic data derived in
24 real time from patients, either by tissue biopsy or through liquid biopsy-based access to
25 circulating tumor DNA or other analytes. This will require a cultural change in the care of
26 HCC patients, shifting from a state in which the diagnosis and evaluation of patients is
27 performed non-invasively, to regular use of tissue biopsy and highly sensitive liquid biopsy
28 assays. Development of robust, reproducible predictive biomarkers of high reliability is a
29 key priority to facilitate this transition (**Table 6**). The first implementations of the biomarker-
30 based approaches should be within RCT, which should now routinely require tissue biopsy
31 and liquid biopsy collection as a condition of trial enrollment. Tumor biopsy at screening for
32 trial entry and liquid biopsy at different time points should be mandatory in clinical trials for
33 advanced HCC to allow identification of prognostic and predictive biomarkers, guide clinical
34 decision-making and improve patient outcomes.
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

42 ***Novel endpoints might be adopted***

43 The revolution in drug development in HCC has created the need to revisit established
44 conventions in trial design. OS is regarded as a core endpoint. Nonetheless, the realization
45 that more than 60% of patients progressing after TACE and 50% of patients progressing
46 after first-line systemic therapies receive effective next line therapies may compel the
47 adoption of PFS as an acceptable primary endpoint for major trials (**Table 1**). In this position
48 paper, we already are recommending PFS as co-primary endpoint for intermediate HCC
49 trials, and for phase II-III trials assessing systemic therapies, with restrictive cut-points.
50 Similarly, patient reported outcomes (PRO) should be pursued as a relevant endpoint in
51 HCC trials, particularly as we enter an era of potent, but seemingly toxic, dual or triple
52 combination therapies possibly associated with serious adverse events. It is important to
53 recognize that currently many HCC patients reach a point in their therapeutic journey when
54 they elect to forgo potentially life extending therapy in favor of approaches that optimize
55 their quality of life. It is therefore critical to extend decisions about HCC trial design and
56 endpoints to incorporate elements that reflect the importance of patient well-being.
57
58
59
60

FIGURE LEGENDS

Figure 1. Modified BCLC staging system considering new effective therapies in advanced stages [modified and up-dated from EASL Guidelines(3)] Management of patients with HCC is guided by the Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer (BCLC) staging system, which takes into account both tumor extent and the severity of the underlying liver disease, and defines five prognostic subgroups with respective treatments. Treatment for early stage tumors is with curative intent and options include radiofrequency ablation, hepatic resection, and liver transplantation. Patients with intermediate or advanced HCC are candidates for chemoembolization or systemic therapies, respectively. *Patients with end-stage liver disease if Child-Pugh class C should first be considered for liver transplantation. **Patients with preserved hepatic function Child-Pugh class A with normal bilirubin and no portal hypertension are optimal candidates for hepatic resection. ‡The combination of atezolizumab plus bevacizumab is not yet approved but is set to become the new first-line treatment for advanced HCC(134)- DDLT, deceased donor liver transplantation; ECOG, Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; LDLT, living donor liver transplantation; M1, distant metastasis; N1, lymph node metastasis; OS, overall survival.

Figure 2. Overall survival outcomes (HR, 95% CI) of phase III clinical trials testing molecular targeted therapies, checkpoint inhibitors and radioembolization in patients with advanced-stage hepatocellular carcinoma. Blue=positive trials for superiority. Orange=positive trials for non-inferiority. Black=negative trials for the primary end-point, Red=tested drug was significantly worse than the standard of care. Vertical red line at HR=1.08 defines the upper boundary of 95% confidence interval accepted by FDA for a positive non-inferior study.

Figure 3. Correlation between progression-free survival and overall survival in 27 phase III trials of advanced HCC (modified from Llovet, J Hep 2019(20)) . Trial-level correlation between endpoints using criteria from the Institute for Quality and Efficiency in Health Care (IQWiG). R and R2 refers to the weighted Pearson coefficient between the HR of OS and the HR of the surrogate endpoint. Each dot represents one of the phase III clinical trials conducted on advanced HCC. Size of the dot is proportional to the total number of patients enrolled in the trial. First 21 phase III trials defined a cut-off of 0.6 for PFS to correlate with a significant OS (colored in grey)(20). Afterwards, six additional phase III trials have been reported afterwards: two positive for survival show a HR for PFS <0.6 (green color) and four negative for OS show a PFS HR > 0.6 (red color). X- and Y-axis depict the value of the HR for the surrogate and the hard endpoint, respectively. Gray shaded areas represent the upper and lower limits of the 95% confidence intervals for the regression. HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HR, hazard ratio; OS, overall survival.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

TABLES

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

Table 1. Recommendations for Trial design and endpoints in patients with HCC by AASLD panel of experts.

Aim	Factor	Considerations and recommendations
Select the target population	BCLC stage	Include patients according to specific BCLC stage (0–C)
	Child-Pugh classification	Include patients in Child–Pugh class A. Consider ALBI grade and MELD score for refinements on Child A class
	Biomarker-based enrichment	Define rationale for using biomarker and tool
Selection of endpoints	Overall survival (OS)	Primary endpoint for phase II and III studies assessing treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC.
	Progression-free survival (PFS)	Primary endpoint for Phase II studies assessing primary treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC. Consider co-primary in phase III studies in intermediate and advanced HCC, with strict rules for calling superiority Independent centralized blinded review*
	Time to Progression (TTP)	Secondary (or co-primary) endpoint for Phase II studies assessing primary treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC. Independent centralized blinded review*

29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

	Recurrence-free survival (RFS)	Primary endpoint in phase II/III studies assessing adjuvant treatments
	Time to recurrence (TTR)	Primary endpoint (2 nd choice) in phase II/III studies assessing adjuvant treatments
	Objective response rate	Phase II co-primary endpoint, Phase III secondary end-point Surrogate endpoint for accelerated approval Independent blinded review assessing mRECIST for interventions at early/intermediate HCC. Both RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST for interventions at advanced stages
	Patient reported outcomes (PRO)	Recommended as secondary endpoint in all phase III investigations, particularly when testing loco-regional or systemic therapies
	Composite endpoints	OS plus PFS might be considered
Select control arm	Surveillance	Ultrasound with or without AFP
	Adjuvant therapy after resection or local ablation for early stage HCC	Placebo
	Early stage-non surgical	Radiofrequency ablation. Special consideration for single large (>4cm tumoral diameter) when standard of care is TACE as per the stage migration principle.
	Intermediate stage disease	Chemoembolization**
	First line treatment for advanced stage disease	Atezolizumab plus bevacizumab will be considered when

		approved. Sorafenib or lenvatinib plus supportive care Other treatments in Asia**
	Second-line treatment for advanced stage disease	Regorafenib (only in patients tolerant to sorafenib) or cabozantinib. Ramucirumab only in patients with AFP > 400 ng/ml
	Third-line treatment for advanced stage disease	Placebo
To stratify factors before randomization	Adjuvant	A) Geographical region B) Tumor size and number C) Type of curative treatment D) Pathological factors of high risk (size >3cm, microvascular invasion, poor differentiation degree and tumor satellites)
	Intermediate-stage	Child-Pugh class, AFP >400 ng/ml and geographical region. ALBI score might be considered. Selection of large tumoral burden as per above 7-up-to-7 has been proposed (adopting criteria for extended indications in liver transplantation), but requires validation
	First-line advanced stage	ECOG status, MVI-EHS, AFP >400 ng/ml and geographical region, Etiology (HCV vs others when testing sorafenib)
	Second-line advanced stage	ECOG status, MVI, EHS, geographical region, AFP >400 ng/ml. Type of progression might be considered

1
2
3 AFP, α -fetoprotein; BCLC, Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer; ECOG, Eastern Cooperative
4 Oncology Group; HCC; hepatocellular carcinoma; EHS=extrahepatic spread;
5 MVI=macrovascular invasion; RECIST, Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid
6 Tumours.

7
8 *= not always recommended

9
10 **= Asian guidelines recommend additional treatments for

11 Intermediate HCC: Japan: HAIC; China: Resection; Taiwan: Resection/Y90

12
13 Advanced HCC: Japan : HAIC/Resection/TACE; China: FOLFOX4, resection/TACE;
14 Korea: TACE
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

Table 2. Expected outcomes reported in phase III trials in HCC research.

Expected outcomes	Early	Intermediate	Advanced (1 st line) ***	Advanced (2 nd line)
Overall survival		TACE: 21 mo(93), 26mo (95)-33 mo(96)	Sorafenib: ~11-14(7,11,24) mo Lenvatinib: ~13 mo(7) Atezolizumab+bevacizumab *** (134)	Regorafenib: ~11 mo(8) Cabozantinib: ~10 mo(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~8 mo(10)
PFS	RFS*adjuvant resection /ablation: 33mo	TACE: 7mo (93,95)	Sorafenib: ~4(7) months Lenvatinib: ~7 months(7)	Regorafenib: ~3 mo(8) Cabozantinib: ~5 mo(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~3 mo(10)
ORR*		TACE: ~45-54% (93)	Sorafenib: ~10%(7) Lenvatinib: ~24%(7) Atezolizumab+bevacizumab : 33%; RECIST: 27%(134)	Regorafenib: ~10%(8) Cabozantinib: ~4%(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~5%(10)

*RFS: Recurrence free survival

** ORR as per mRECIST

***Atezolizumab+bevacizumab is expected to be first line, while sorafenib and lenvatinib will be second line therapies, see **Fig 1**

Table 3. Phases of Surveillance Test Validation in Hepatocellular Carcinoma [(adopted from Pepe et al(57))].

Phases	Type of Study	Design	Aims	Comments
1	Preclinical exploratory	Case-control from biobanked samples	Promising HCC biomarkers identified	Avoid multiple freeze-thaw for blood and tissue samples
2	Clinical Assay and Validation	Large case-controlled accounting for confounders	Biomarker detects clinically established early stage HCC	Appropriate sample size and power essential
3	Retrospective longitudinal	PRoBE	Biomarker detects pre-clinical HCC	Assess benefits and harms of surveillance
4	Prospective screening	Prospective cirrhosis cohort	Confirms the ability of the novel biomarker to detect early stage disease	Assess benefits and harms
5	Cancer control	Randomized study of new biomarker compared to US and AFP	Impact of screening on reducing mortality in patients with cirrhosis (or high-risk populations)	Survival primary endpoint; secondary endpoint early stage detection, assess harms

Table 4. Guidelines recommendations for treatment according to levels of evidence* and strength of recommendation.** *Treatments accepted in guidelines (EASL(3) and AASLD(4)) and level of evidence (modified from Llovet et al(119))*

Category	Treatment	Eligibility criteria or alternative approaches	Evidence level	Recommendation strength
Surgical treatment	Resection	Patient with solitary tumors and well-preserved liver function	2A	Strong
	Liver transplantation	Patients with single tumors of ≤ 5 cm or ≤ 3 nodules of ≥ 3 cm (Milan criteria) not suitable for resection. Down staging to Milan *.	2A	Strong; Moderate: down staging (US), not recommended in Europe
Loco-regional treatment	Local-ablation	Radiofrequency, BCLC 0-A not suitable for surgery, upper limit 4-5cm Radiofrequency ablation (and alternatively percutaneous ethanol) injection for patients with BCLC 0-A tumours that are not suitable for surgery.	2A 2B	Strong
	Chemoembolization	BCLC B (multinodular asymptomatic tumours without vascular invasion or extra-hepatic spread)	1A	Strong
Systemic treatment	Atezolizumab+ bevacizumab	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies	1A	Strong (not yet included in guidelines)
	Sorafenib	Child-Pugh A	1A	Strong

		Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies		
	Lenvatinib	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies. No Main portal vein invasion	1A	Strong
	Regorafenib	Child-Pugh A Tolerant to sorafenib. Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib	1A	Strong
	Ramucirumab	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib AFP > 400 ng/dL	1A	Strong
	Cabozantinib	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib	1A	Strong
Palliative care	Palliative support	Patients with BCLC D tumours should receive management of pain, nutrition and psychological support	2B	
<i>Treatments under investigation or with further evidence required to be adopted in guidelines</i>				
Surgical treatment	Resection	Patients with multifocal small tumors (≤ 3 nodules ≤ 3 cm) or mild portal hypertension)	3A	Moderate
		Adjuvant treatments after resection/local ablation	1D	Strongly not recommended

	Liver transplantation	Up-to-seven criteria in patients without microvascular invasion	2B	Moderate
		Neo-adjuvant loco-regional therapies if the waiting list exceeds 6 months	2D	Moderate
		Living donor liver transplantation in patients with a waiting list exceeding 6-7 months	2A	Moderate
Loco-regional treatment	Other ablative therapies, such as cryoablation, laser, irreversible electroporation or high-intensity focused ultrasound	Patients with BCLC 0-A tumours that are not suitable for surgery	N/A	Not recommended
	Chemoembolization	Use of drug-eluting beads, which has shown similar response rates as gelfoam-lipiodol particles associated with less systemic adverse events	1D	Moderate
	Chemoembolization combined with systemic TKIs	Multiple RCT failed to show improved outcomes	1A	Not recommended
	Y90-Radioembolization-	In patients at stage BCLC B and in patients BCLC A with a single nodule larger than 4 cm as an alternative to resection	1D	No recommendation
	External conformal radiotherapy (SBRT)	3D Single tumors at early stages (BCLC A)	3A	No recommendation

Systemic treatment	Molecular targeted therapies and immune-based therapies	- Patients BCLC A as neo-adjuvant therapies. - Patients BCLC B in combination with TACE, Child Pugh A class, ECOG 0-1	1A	No recommendation
Palliative care	Radiotherapy to alleviate pain	Patients with bone metastasis	3A	Moderate

AASLD, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases; BCLC, Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer Group; EASL, European Association for the Study of the Liver; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma.

*National Cancer Institute classification: **Strength of evidence:** Level #1 (RCT or meta-analysis); #2 non-randomized controlled studies; #3 case series; **Strength of end-point:** A: survival B: cancer-specific survival; C Quality of life, and D: others.**

Table modified from EASL-EORTC guidelines(5)

Table 5. Basic concepts and key points for standard RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST assessment in HCC(27)

Evaluation		RECIST 1.1	mRECIST
Baseline Assessment	Target lesions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify up to 2 intrahepatic tumor lesions ≥ 1 cm, that appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest viable tumor diameter. Identify extrahepatic tumor lesions that are ≥ 1 cm in longest diameter and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest overall tumor diameter. When selecting lymph nodes as extrahepatic target lesions, the short axis must be measured and it must be ≥ 1.5 cm. Overall, include a maximum of 2 target lesions per organ and 5 target lesions in total. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify up to 2 intrahepatic tumor lesions ≥ 1 cm, that show typical intratumoral arterial enhancement and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest viable tumor diameter. Identify extrahepatic tumor lesions (and intrahepatic lesions with atypical enhancement in patients without typical intrahepatic lesions) that are ≥ 1 cm in longest diameter and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest overall tumor diameter. When selecting lymph nodes as extrahepatic target lesions, the short axis must be measured: it must be ≥ 1.5 cm for all lymph nodes except for porta hepatis lymph nodes where it is required that it is ≥ 2 cm. Overall, include a maximum of 2 target lesions per organ and 5 target lesions in total.
	Non-target lesions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tumor lesions or sites of disease that have not been selected as target lesions should be recorded at baseline as non-target lesions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tumor lesions or sites of disease that have not been selected as target lesions should be recorded at baseline as non-target lesions. Malignant portal vein thrombosis should be considered as a non-target lesions. Ascites and pleural effusions should not be considered as tumor lesions, unless associated with unequivocal neoplastic peritoneal or pleural nodules.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the longest overall tumor diameter for intrahepatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure the longest viable tumor diameter of typical intrahepatic

<p>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23</p> <p>Post-Baseline Assessments</p>	<p>Target lesions</p>	<p>and non-nodal extrahepatic target lesions, and the short axis diameter for nodal target lesions.</p>	<p>target lesions avoiding the inclusion of any major intervening areas of necrosis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pay attention in distinguishing areas of tumor necrosis from areas of reduced arterial perfusion caused by changes in local hemodynamics. A change from hypervascularity to hypovascularity does not represent tumor necrosis. Only tumors or tumor areas that show complete absence of contrast enhancement can be assumed to represent necrotic tissue. • Measure the longest overall tumor diameter for atypical intrahepatic target lesions and non-nodal extrahepatic target lesions, and the short axis diameter for nodal target lesions
	<p>Non-target lesions</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Qualitative assessment of response. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Qualitative assessment of response, taking into account tumor necrosis for typical intrahepatic non-target lesions. • Complete disappearance of enhancement inside malignant portal vein thrombus should be considered equivalent to complete regression
	<p>New lesions</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any new lesion that has no corresponding lesion on baseline imaging and is unequivocally malignant is considered as evidence of PD. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By definition, a new lesion has no corresponding lesion on the baseline imaging. • A new liver lesion ≥ 1 cm that shows nonrim-like hypervascularization in the arterial phase with nonperipheral washout in the portal venous or the delayed phase meets the criteria for unequivocal new lesion and declares PD. • Any new liver lesion <1 cm or any new liver lesion of any size that fails to show the enhancement pattern described above should be considered as equivocal and can only be diagnosed as HCC by evidence of either a change in enhancement pattern (when ≥ 1 cm) or an interval growth ≥ 1 cm in subsequent scans. • If an equivocal new lesion is later determined to be unequivocal, the timepoint of progression will be the

			<p>timepoint that the lesion was first noted as equivocal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ascites or pleural effusion that appear during treatment should not be assumed to represent PD, unless associated with the emergence of unequivocal neoplastic peritoneal or pleural nodules.
--	--	--	--

Overall assessment of tumor response by RECIST 1.1 or mRECIST

Target lesions	Non-target lesions	New lesions	Overall response
CR	CR	No	CR
CR	Non-CR-NonPD	No	PR
PR	Non-PD	No	PR
SD	Non-PD	No	SD
PD	Any	Yes or no	PD
Any	PD	Yes or no	PD
Any	Any	Yes	PD

CR, complete response; PR, partial response; SD, stable disease; PD, progressive disease.

Table 6. Unmet needs in trial design in HCC.

1. Clinical trials:

- Evidence-based data from RCT to provide standard of care in
 - a) Adjuvant setting after resection/local ablation
 - b) Neo-adjuvant setting prior resection/liver transplantation
 - c) Define role of loco-regional therapies or SBRT in large single non-surgical tumors
- Evidence-based data from RCT to improve the standard of care in
 - a) Combination or systemic therapies to improve chemoembolization in intermediate HCC
 - b) Combination (or triple) therapies for 1st line advanced HCC
 - c) Molecular and immune-based therapies for patients with HCC and impaired liver function (Child-Pugh B).
- Pivotal proof-of-concept phase II trials and trial enrichment for oncogenic drivers or signaling pathways
- Systematic inclusion of cost-benefit analyses

2. Identification and validation of biomarkers:

- Develop biomarkers for early detection in surveillance programs
- Identify biomarkers predicting treatment response and primary resistance (tissue or liquid biopsy)

3. Quality of life & patient reported outcomes:

- Incorporate tools for measuring quality of life into clinical trial design as an endpoint
- Systematic inclusion of patient reported outcomes

4. Molecular pathogenesis and drug development:

- Integrate molecular subclasses to the clinical staging system in order to better guide treatment allocation
 - Target oncogene addiction loops that result from DNA amplifications and gene mutations or overexpression
 - Improve models for pre-clinical testing of novel drugs
-

Table 7. Variables to be included in clinical trials assessing treatments for HCC patients

Demographic	Age, sex, ethnicity Underlying liver disease (cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis) Etiology : define based upon HCV, HBV, alcohol, NASH-NAFLD and others.
Tumor description	Radiological characteristics: size, number of nodules, macroscopic vascular invasion, extrahepatic spread Alpha-fetoprotein Pathological characteristics in adjuvant trials: size, number, differentiation degree, satellites, micro and macroscopic vascular invasion, pTNM
Staging system	BCLC staging classification
Liver function	Bilirubin, aminotransferases, albumin, alkaline phosphatase, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, serum creatinine, serum sodium, prothrombin time, INR, platelet count Presence of ascites or encephalopathy Child – Pugh score ALBI and MELD score
General health	ECOG status, pain, constitutional syndrome

* Modified from Llovet et al, JNCI 2008(12) HCV = hepatitis C virus; HBV = hepatitis B virus; pTNM = pathological tumor–node–metastasis;

BCLC = Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer; BUN = serum urea nitrogen; MELD: Model of End-Stage Liver Disease; ECOG = Eastern Cooperative

Oncology Group.

REFERENCES

1. Bray F, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.3322/caac.21492>
2. Villanueva A. Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2019;380:1450–1462.
3. Galle PR, Forner A, Llovet JM, Mazzaferro V, Piscaglia F, Raoul J-L, et al. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2018, 56(4):908–43
4. Marrero JA, Kulik LM, Sirlin CB, Zhu AX, Finn RS, Abecassis MM, et al. Diagnosis, Staging, and Management of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: 2018 Practice Guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology.* 2018;68:723–750.
5. Llovet JM, Ducreux M, Lencioni R, Di Bisceglie AM, Galle PR, Dufour JF, et al. EASL-EORTC clinical practice guidelines: management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2012;56:908–943.
6. Llovet JM, Montal R, Sia D, Finn RS. Molecular therapies and precision medicine for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41571-018-0073-4>
7. Kudo M, Finn RS, Qin S, Han K-H, Ikeda K, Piscaglia F, et al. Lenvatinib versus sorafenib in first-line treatment of patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised phase 3 non-inferiority trial. *Lancet.* 2018;391:1163–1173.
8. Bruix J, Qin S, Merle P, Granito A, Huang Y-H, Bodoky G, et al. Regorafenib for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma who progressed on sorafenib treatment (RESORCE): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet.* 2017;389:56–66.
9. Abou-Alfa GK, Meyer T, Cheng A-L, El-Khoueiry AB, Rimassa L, Ryoo B-Y, et al. Cabozantinib in Patients with Advanced and Progressing Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018;379:54–63.
10. Zhu AX, Kang Y-K, Yen C-J, Finn RS, Galle PR, Llovet JM, et al. Ramucirumab after sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma and increased α -fetoprotein concentrations (REACH-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30937-9](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30937-9)
11. Llovet JM, Ricci S, Mazzaferro V, Hilgard P, Gane E, Blanc J-F, et al. Sorafenib in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2008;359:378–390.
12. Llovet JM, Di Bisceglie AM, Bruix J, Kramer BS, Lencioni R, Zhu AX, et al. Design and endpoints of clinical trials in hepatocellular carcinoma. *JNCI Journal of the National Cancer Institute.* 2008;100:698–711.
13. Lee DH, Vielemeyer O. Analysis of overall level of evidence behind Infectious Diseases Society of America practice guidelines. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 2011;171:18–22.

14. Jadad AR, Moore RA, Carroll D, Jenkinson C, Reynolds DJ, Gavaghan DJ, et al. Assessing the quality of reports of randomized clinical trials: is blinding necessary? *Control. Clin. Trials.* 1996;17:1–12.
15. Verhagen AP, de Vet HC, de Bie RA, Kessels AG, Boers M, Bouter LM, et al. The Delphi list: a criteria list for quality assessment of randomized clinical trials for conducting systematic reviews developed by Delphi consensus. *J. Clin. Epidemiol.* 1998;51:1235–1241.
16. Altman DG, Schulz KF, Moher D, Egger M, Davidoff F, Elbourne D, et al. The revised CONSORT statement for reporting randomized trials: explanation and elaboration. *Ann. Intern. Med.* 2001;134:663–694.
17. Piaggio G, Elbourne DR, Altman DG, Pocock SJ, Evans SJW, CONSORT Group. Reporting of noninferiority and equivalence randomized trials: an extension of the CONSORT statement. *JAMA.* 2006;295:1152–1160.
18. van Tulder M, Furlan A, Bombardier C, Bouter L, Editorial Board of the Cochrane Collaboration Back Review Group. Updated method guidelines for systematic reviews in the cochrane collaboration back review group. *Spine.* 2003;28:1290–1299.
19. Lopez PM, Villanueva A, Llovet JM. Systematic review: evidence-based management of hepatocellular carcinoma - an updated analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther.* 2006;23:1535–1547.
20. Llovet JM, Montal R, Villanueva A. Randomized trials and endpoints in advanced HCC: Role of PFS as a surrogate of survival. *J. Hepatol.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2019.01.028>
21. Lencioni R, Llovet JM. Modified RECIST (mRECIST) assessment for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Semin. Liver Dis.* 2010;30:52–60.
22. Cheng AL, Kang YK, Lin DY, Park JW, Kudo M, Qin S, et al. Sunitinib versus sorafenib in advanced hepatocellular cancer: results of a randomized phase III trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:4067–4075.
23. Finn RS, Merle P, Granito A, Huang Y-H, Bodoky G, Pracht M, et al. Outcomes of sequential treatment with sorafenib followed by regorafenib for HCC: additional analyses from the phase 3 RESORCE trial. *J. Hepatol.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2018.04.010>
24. Checkmate 459 results [Internet]. Available from: <https://news.bms.com/press-release/bmy/bristol-myers-squibb-announces-results-checkmate-459-study-evaluating-opdivo-nivol>
25. Prasad V, Kim C, Burotto M, Vandross A. The Strength of Association Between Surrogate End Points and Survival in Oncology: A Systematic Review of Trial-Level Meta-analyses. *JAMA Intern. Med.* 2015;175:1389–1398.
26. Eisenhauer EA, Therasse P, Bogaerts J, Schwartz LH, Sargent D, Ford R, et al. New response evaluation criteria in solid tumours: revised RECIST guideline (version 1.1). *European journal of cancer (Oxford, England : 1990).* 2009;45:228–247.
27. Llovet JM, Lencioni R. mRECIST for HCC: Performance and novel refinements. *J.*

- 1
2 Hepatol. 2020;72:288–306.
3
- 4 28. Edeline J, Boucher E, Rolland Y, Vauléon E, Pracht M, Perrin C, et al. Comparison of
5 tumor response by Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumors (RECIST) and
6 modified RECIST in patients treated with sorafenib for hepatocellular carcinoma.
7 Cancer. 2012;118:147–156.
8
- 9 29. Ronot M, Bouattour M, Wassermann J, Bruno O, Dreyer C, Larroque B, et al.
10 Alternative Response Criteria (Choi, European Association for the Study of the Liver,
11 and Modified Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumors [RECIST]) Versus
12 RECIST 1.1 in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma Treated With
13 Sorafenib. *Oncologist*. 2014;19:394–402.
14
- 15 30. Takada J, Hidaka H, Nakazawa T, Kondo M, Numata K, Tanaka K, et al. Modified
16 response evaluation criteria in solid tumors is superior to response evaluation criteria
17 in solid tumors for assessment of responses to sorafenib in patients with advanced
18 hepatocellular carcinoma. *BMC Res. Notes*. 2015;8:609.
19
- 20 31. Lencioni R, Montal R, Torres F, Park J-W, Decaens T, Raoul J-L, et al. Objective
21 response by mRECIST as a predictor and potential surrogate end-point of overall
22 survival in advanced HCC. *J. Hepatol*. 2017;66:1166–1172.
23
- 24 32. Meyer T, Palmer DH, Cheng A-L, Hocke J, Loembé A-B, Yen C-J. mRECIST to
25 predict survival in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: Analysis of two randomised
26 phase II trials comparing nintedanib vs sorafenib. *Liver Int*. 2017;37:1047–1055.
27
- 28 33. Burzykowski T, Buyse M. Surrogate threshold effect: an alternative measure for meta-
29 analytic surrogate endpoint validation. *Pharm. Stat*. 2006;5:173–186.
30
- 31 34. Reig M, Rimola J, Torres F, Darnell A, Rodriguez-Lope C, Forner A, et al.
32 Postprogression survival of patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma:
33 Rationale for second-line trial design. *HEPATOLOGY*, Vol. 00, No. X, 2013 REIG ET
34 AL. 2013;58:2023–2031.
35
- 36 35. Wolchok JD, Hoos A, O'Day S, Weber JS, Hamid O, Lebbé C, et al. Guidelines for
37 the evaluation of immune therapy activity in solid tumors: immune-related response
38 criteria. *Clin. Cancer Res*. 2009;15:7412–7420.
39
- 40 36. Seymour L, Bogaerts J, Perrone A, Ford R, Schwartz LH, Mandrekar S, et al.
41 iRECIST: guidelines for response criteria for use in trials testing immunotherapeutics.
42 *Lancet Oncol*. 2017;18:e143–e152.
43
- 44 37. Gyawali B, Kesselheim AS. Reinforcing the social compromise of accelerated
45 approval. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
46 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41571-018-0066-3>
47
- 48 38. El-Khoueiry AB, Sangro B, Yau T, Crocenzi TS, Kudo M, Hsu C, et al. Nivolumab in
49 patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (CheckMate 040): an open-label,
50 non-comparative, phase 1/2 dose escalation and expansion trial. *Lancet* [Internet].
51 2017; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(17\)31046-2](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)31046-2)
52
- 53 39. Zhu AX, Finn RS, Edeline J, Cattan S, Ogasawara S, Palmer D, et al. Pembrolizumab
54 in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma previously treated with sorafenib
55 (KEYNOTE-224): a non-randomised, open-label phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol*.
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 [Internet]. 2018;Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30351-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30351-6)
3
- 4 40. Center for Drug Evaluation, Research. FDA grants accelerated approval to nivolumab
5 and ipilimumab combinatio [Internet]. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2020 [cited
6 2020 Mar 26];Available from: [http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
7 [approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
8 [combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
9
- 10 41. Finn RS, Ryoo B-Y, Merle P, Kudo M, Bouattour M, Lim HY, et al. Pembrolizumab As
11 Second-Line Therapy in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma in
12 KEYNOTE-240: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Phase III Trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
13 2019;JCO1901307.
14
- 15 42. Ellis LM, Bernstein DS, Voest EE, Berlin JD, Sargent D, Cortazar P, et al. American
16 Society of Clinical Oncology perspective: Raising the bar for clinical trials by defining
17 clinically meaningful outcomes. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2014;32:1277–1280.
18
- 19 43. Nault J-C, Cheng A-L, Sangro B, Llovet JM. Milestones in the pathogenesis and
20 management of primary liver cancer. *J. Hepatol.* 2020;72:209–214.
21
- 22 44. Singal AG, Lampertico P, Nahon P. Epidemiology and surveillance for hepatocellular
23 carcinoma: New trends. *J. Hepatol.* 2020;72:250–261.
24
- 25 45. Tzartzeva K, Obi J, Rich NE, Parikh ND, Marrero JA, Yopp A, et al. Surveillance
26 Imaging and Alpha Fetoprotein for Early Detection of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in
27 Patients With Cirrhosis: A Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology.* 2018;154:1706–1718.e1.
28
- 29 46. Atiq O, Tiro J, Yopp AC, Muffler A, Marrero JA, Parikh ND, et al. An assessment of
30 benefits and harms of hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in patients with cirrhosis.
31 *Hepatology.* 2017;65:1196–1205.
32
- 33 47. Park J-W, Chen M, Colombo M, Roberts LR, Schwartz M, Chen P-J, et al. Global
34 patterns of hepatocellular carcinoma management from diagnosis to death: the
35 BRIDGE Study. *Liver Int.* 2015;35:2155–2166.
36
- 37 48. Totoki Y, Tatsuno K, Covington KR, Ueda H, Creighton CJ, Kato M, et al. Trans-
38 ancestry mutational landscape of hepatocellular carcinoma genomes. *Nat. Genet.*
39 2014;46:1267–1273.
40
- 41 49. Schulze K, Imbeaud S, Letouzé E, Alexandrov LB, Calderaro J, Rebouissou S, et al.
42 Exome sequencing of hepatocellular carcinomas identifies new mutational signatures
43 and potential therapeutic targets. *Nat. Genet.* 2015;47:505–511.
44
- 45 50. Ally A, Balasundaram M, Carlsen R, Chuah E, Clarke A, Dhalla N, et al.
46 Comprehensive and Integrative Genomic Characterization of Hepatocellular
47 Carcinoma. *Cell.* 2017;169:1327–1341.e23.
48
- 49 51. Gao Q, Zhu H, Dong L, Shi W, Chen R, Song Z, et al. Integrated Proteogenomic
50 Characterization of HBV-Related Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cell.* 2019;179:561–
51 577.e22.
52
- 53 52. Johnson PJ, Pirrie SJ, Cox TF, Berhane S, Teng M, Palmer D, et al. The detection of
54 hepatocellular carcinoma using a prospectively developed and validated model based
55 on serological biomarkers. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* 2014;23:144–153.
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 53. Wang M, Sanda M, Comunale MA, Herrera H, Swindell C, Kono Y, et al. Changes in
3 the Glycosylation of Kininogen and the Development of a Kininogen-Based Algorithm
4 for the Early Detection of HCC. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* 2017;26:795–
5 803.
6
- 7
8 54. von Felden J, Craig AJ, Villanueva A. Role of circulating tumor DNA to help decision-
9 making in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncoscience.* 2018;5:209–211.
10
- 11 55. Kisiel JB, Dukek BA, Kanipakam RVSR, Ghaz HM, Yab TC, Berger CK, et al.
12 Hepatocellular Carcinoma Detection by Plasma Methylated DNA: Discovery, Phase I
13 Pilot, and Phase II Clinical Validation. *Hepatology* [Internet]. 2018;Available from:
14 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/hep.30244>
15
- 16 56. Khatri G, Pedrosa I, Ananthakrishnan L, de Leon AD, Fetzer DT, Leyendecker J, et
17 al. Abbreviated-protocol screening MRI vs. complete-protocol diagnostic MRI for
18 detection of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: An equivalence study
19 using LI-RADS v2018. *J. Magn. Reson. Imaging* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
20 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/jmri.26835>
21
22
- 23 57. Pepe MS, Etzioni R, Feng Z, Potter JD, Thompson ML, Thornquist M, et al. Phases of
24 biomarker development for early detection of cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.*
25 2001;93:1054–1061.
26
- 27 58. Pepe MS, Feng Z, Janes H, Bossuyt PM, Potter JD. Pivotal evaluation of the
28 accuracy of a biomarker used for classification or prediction: standards for study
29 design. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 2008;100:1432–1438.
30
31
- 32 59. Ioannou GN, Green P, Lowy E, Mun EJ, Berry K. Differences in hepatocellular
33 carcinoma risk, predictors and trends over time according to etiology of cirrhosis.
34 *PLoS One.* 2018;13:e0204412.
35
- 36 60. Kanwal F, Kramer JR, Mapakshi S, Natarajan Y, Chayanupatkul M, Richardson PA,
37 et al. Risk of Hepatocellular Cancer in Patients With Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver
38 Disease. *Gastroenterology.* 2018;155:1828–1837.e2.
39
40
- 41 61. Kanwal F, Singal AG. Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Current Best
42 Practice and Future Direction. *Gastroenterology* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
43 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2019.02.049>
44
- 45 62. Yang H-I, Yeh M-L, Wong GL, Peng C-Y, Chen C-H, Trinh HN, et al. REAL-B (Real-
46 world Effectiveness from the Asia Pacific Rim Liver Consortium for HBV) Risk Score
47 for the Prediction of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Chronic Hepatitis B Patients Treated
48 with Oral Antiviral Therapy. *J. Infect. Dis.* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
49 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/infdis/jiz477>
50
51
- 52 63. Office of the Commissioner. Biomarkers at FDA [Internet]. U.S. Food and Drug
53 Administration. 2019 [cited 2019 Nov 15];Available from: [http://www.fda.gov/science-](http://www.fda.gov/science-research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda)
54 [research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda](http://www.fda.gov/science-research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda)
55
- 56 64. Goodsaid FM. The Labyrinth of Product Development and Regulatory Approvals in
57 Liquid Biopsy Diagnostics. *Clin. Transl. Sci.* 2019;12:431–439.
58
- 59 65. Simon TG, Ma Y, Ludvigsson JF, Chong DQ, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS, et al.
60 Association Between Aspirin Use and Risk of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *JAMA*

- 1
2 Oncol. 2018;4:1683–1690.
3
- 4 66. Malehmir M, Pfister D, Gallage S, Szydłowska M, Inverso D, Kotsiliti E, et al. Platelet
5 GPIIb/IIIa is a mediator and potential interventional target for NASH and subsequent liver
6 cancer. *Nat. Med.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-](http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-019-0379-5)
7 [019-0379-5](http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-019-0379-5)
8
- 9 67. Simon TG, Duberg A-S, Aleman S, Hagstrom H, Nguyen LH, Khalili H, et al.
10 Lipophilic Statins and Risk for Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Death in Patients With
11 Chronic Viral Hepatitis: Results From a Nationwide Swedish Population. *Ann. Intern.*
12 *Med.* 2019;171:318–327.
13
- 14 68. Tseng C-H. Metformin and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with type 2
15 diabetes. *Liver Int.* 2018;38:2018–2027.
16
- 17 69. Heimbach JK, Kulik LM, Finn RS, Sirlin CB, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, et al. AASLD
18 guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology.* 2018;67:358–
19 380.
20
- 21 70. Roayaie S, Jibara G, Tabrizian P, Park J-W, Yang J, Yan L, et al. The role of hepatic
22 resection in the treatment of hepatocellular cancer. *Hepatology.* 2015;62:440–451.
23
- 24 71. Roayaie S, Obeidat K, Sposito C, Mariani L, Bhoori S, Pellegrinelli A, et al. Resection
25 of hepatocellular cancer ≤ 2 cm: results from two Western centers. *Hepatology.*
26 2013;57:1426–1435.
27
- 28 72. Muto Y, Moriwaki H, Ninomiya M, Adachi S, Saito A, Takasaki KT, et al. Prevention of
29 second primary tumors by an acyclic retinoid, polypropionic acid, in patients with
30 hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatoma Prevention Study Group. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
31 1996;334:1561–1567.
32
- 33 73. Okita K, Izumi N, Matsui O, Tanaka K, Kaneko S, Moriwaki H, et al. Peretinoin after
34 curative therapy of hepatitis C-related hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomized
35 double-blind placebo-controlled study. *J. Gastroenterol.* 2015;50:191–202.
36
- 37 74. Takayama T, Sekine T, Makuuchi M, Yamasaki S, Kosuge T, Yamamoto J, et al.
38 Adoptive immunotherapy to lower postsurgical recurrence rates of hepatocellular
39 carcinoma: a randomised trial. *Lancet.* 2000;356:802–807.
40
- 41 75. Lau WY, Lai ECH, Leung TWT, Yu SCH. Adjuvant intra-arterial iodine-131-labeled
42 lipiodol for resectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective randomized trial-
43 update on 5-year and 10-year survival. *Ann. Surg.* 2008;247:43–48.
44
- 45 76. Bruix J, Takayama T, Mazzaferro V, Chau GY, Yang J, Kudo M, et al. Adjuvant
46 sorafenib for hepatocellular carcinoma after resection or ablation (STORM): a phase
47 3, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol.* 2015;16:1344–
48 1354.
49
- 50 77. Bott MJ, Yang SC, Park BJ, Adusumilli PS, Rusch VW, Isbell JM, et al. Initial results
51 of pulmonary resection after neoadjuvant nivolumab in patients with resectable non-
52 small cell lung cancer. *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.* 2019;158:269–276.
53
- 54 78. Mazzaferro V, Regalia E, Doci R, Andreola S, Pulvirenti A, Bozzetti F, et al. Liver
55 transplantation for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 cirrhosis. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 1996;334:693–699.
3
- 4 79. Yao FY, Mehta N, Flemming J, Dodge J, Hameed B, Fix O, et al. Downstaging of
5 hepatocellular cancer before liver transplant: long-term outcome compared to tumors
6 within Milan criteria. *Hepatology.* 2015;61:1968–1977.
7
- 8 80. Sposito C, Mariani L, Germini A, Flores Reyes M, Bongini M, Grossi G, et al.
9 Comparative efficacy of sorafenib versus best supportive care in recurrent
10 hepatocellular carcinoma after liver transplantation: a case-control study. *J. Hepatol.*
11 2013;59:59–66.
12
- 13 81. Morales RE, Shoushtari AN, Walsh MM, Grewal P, Lipson EJ, Carvajal RD. Safety
14 and efficacy of ipilimumab to treat advanced melanoma in the setting of liver
15 transplantation. *J Immunother Cancer.* 2015;3:22.
16
- 17 82. Breen DJ, Lencioni R. Image-guided ablation of primary liver and renal tumours. *Nat.*
18 *Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;12:175–186.
19
- 20 83. Cho YK, Kim JK, Kim MY, Rhim H, Han JK. Systematic review of randomized trials
21 for hepatocellular carcinoma treated with percutaneous ablation therapies.
22 *Hepatology.* 2009;49:453–459.
23
- 24 84. Glassberg MB, Ghosh S, Clymer JW, Qadeer RA, Ferko NC, Sadeghirad B, et al.
25 Microwave ablation compared with radiofrequency ablation for treatment of
26 hepatocellular carcinoma and liver metastases: a systematic review and meta-
27 analysis. *Onco. Targets. Ther.* 2019;12:6407–6438.
28
- 29 85. Nault J-C, Sutter O, Nahon P, Ganne-Carrié N, Séror O. Percutaneous treatment of
30 hepatocellular carcinoma: State of the art and innovations. *J. Hepatol.* 2018;68:783–
31 797.
32
- 33 86. Llovet JM, Real MI, Montaña X, Planas R, Coll S, Aponte J, et al. Arterial
34 embolisation or chemoembolisation versus symptomatic treatment in patients with
35 unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet.*
36 2002;359:1734–1739.
37
- 38 87. Lo C-M, Ngan H, Tso W-K, Liu C-L, Lam C-M, Poon RT-P, et al. Randomized
39 controlled trial of transarterial lipiodol chemoembolization for unresectable
40 hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology.* 2002;35:1164–1171.
41
- 42 88. Llovet JM, Bruix J. Systematic review of randomized trials for unresectable
43 hepatocellular carcinoma: Chemoembolization improves survival. *Hepatology.*
44 2003;37:429–442.
45
- 46 89. Salem R, Mazzaferro V, Sangro B. Yttrium 90 radioembolization for the treatment of
47 hepatocellular carcinoma: biological lessons, current challenges, and clinical
48 perspectives. *Hepatology.* 2013;58:2188–2197.
49
- 50 90. Bolondi L, Burroughs A, Dufour J-F, Galle PR, Mazzaferro V, Piscaglia F, et al.
51 Heterogeneity of patients with intermediate (BCLC B) Hepatocellular Carcinoma:
52 proposal for a subclassification to facilitate treatment decisions. *Semin. Liver Dis.*
53 2012;32:348–359.
54
- 55 91. Kudo M, Arizumi T, Ueshima K, Sakurai T, Kitano M, Nishida N. Subclassification of
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 BCLC B Stage Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Treatment Strategies: Proposal of
3 Modified Bolondi's Subclassification (Kinki Criteria). *Dig. Dis.* 2015;33:751–758.
4
- 5 92. Forner A, Gilabert M, Bruix J, Raoul JL. Treatment of intermediate-stage
6 hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 2014;11:525–535.
7
- 8 93. Meyer T, Fox R, Ma YT, Ross PJ, James MW, Sturgess R, et al. Sorafenib in
9 combination with transarterial chemoembolisation in patients with unresectable
10 hepatocellular carcinoma (TACE 2): a randomised placebo-controlled, double-blind,
11 phase 3 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2017;2:565–575.
12
13
- 14 94. Lencioni R, Llovet JM, Han G, Tak WY, Yang J, Guglielmi A, et al. Sorafenib or
15 placebo plus TACE with doxorubicin-eluting beads for intermediate stage HCC: The
16 SPACE trial. *J. Hepatol.* 2016;64:1090–1098.
17
- 18 95. Kudo M, Han G, Finn RS, Poon RT, Blanc JF, Yan L, et al. Brivanib as adjuvant
19 therapy to transarterial chemoembolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma:
20 A randomized phase III trial. *Hepatology.* 2014;60:1697–1707.
21
22
- 23 96. Kudo M, Cheng A-L, Park J-W, Park JH, Liang P-C, Hidaka H, et al. Orantinib versus
24 placebo combined with transcatheter arterial chemoembolisation in patients with
25 unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma (ORIENTAL): a randomised, double-blind,
26 placebo-controlled, multicentre, phase 3 study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.*
27 2018;3:37–46.
28
- 29 97. Johnson PJ, Berhane S, Kagebayashi C, Satomura S, Teng M, Reeves HL, et al.
30 Assessment of liver function in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a new
31 evidence-based approach-the ALBI grade. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;33:550–558.
32
33
- 34 98. Edeline J, Blanc J-F, Johnson P, Campillo-Gimenez B, Ross P, Ma YT, et al. A
35 multicentre comparison between Child Pugh and Albumin-Bilirubin scores in patients
36 treated with sorafenib for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Liver Int.* 2016;36:1821–1828.
37
- 38 99. Kadalayil L, Benini R, Pallan L, O'Beirne J, Marelli L, Yu D, et al. A simple prognostic
39 scoring system for patients receiving transarterial embolisation for hepatocellular
40 cancer. *Ann. Oncol.* 2013;24:2565–2570.
41
42
- 43 100. Waked I, Berhane S, Toyoda H, Chan SL, Stern N, Palmer D, et al. Transarterial
44 chemo-embolisation of hepatocellular carcinoma: impact of liver function and vascular
45 invasion. *Br. J. Cancer.* 2017;116:448–454.
46
- 47 101. Lencioni R, de Baere T, Soulen MC, Rilling WS, Geschwind J-FH. Lipiodol
48 transarterial chemoembolization for hepatocellular carcinoma: A systematic review of
49 efficacy and safety data. *Hepatology.* 2016;64:106–116.
50
51
- 52 102. Meyer T, Kirkwood A, Roughton M, Beare S, Tsochatzis E, Yu D, et al. A
53 randomised phase II/III trial of 3-weekly cisplatin-based sequential transarterial
54 chemoembolisation vs embolisation alone for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br. J.*
55 *Cancer.* 2013;108:1252–1259.
56
- 57 103. Lammer J, Malagari K, Vogl T, Pilleul F, Denys A, Watkinson A, et al. Prospective
58 randomized study of doxorubicin-eluting-bead embolization in the treatment of
59 hepatocellular carcinoma: results of the PRECISION V study. *Cardiovasc. Intervent.*
60 *Radiol.* 2010;33:41–52.

104. de Baere T, Arai Y, Lencioni R, Geschwind J-F, Rilling W, Salem R, et al. Treatment of Liver Tumors with Lipiodol TACE: Technical Recommendations from Experts Opinion. *Cardiovasc. Intervent. Radiol.* 2016;39:334–343.
105. Gillmore R, Stuart S, Kirkwood A, Hameeduddin A, Woodward N, Burroughs AK, et al. EASL and mRECIST responses are independent prognostic factors for survival in hepatocellular cancer patients treated with transarterial embolization. *J. Hepatol.* 2011;55:1309–1316.
106. Vincenzi B, Di Maio M, Silletta M, D'Onofrio L, Spoto C, Piccirillo MC, et al. Prognostic Relevance of Objective Response According to EASL Criteria and mRECIST Criteria in Hepatocellular Carcinoma Patients Treated with Loco-Regional Therapies: A Literature-Based Meta-Analysis. *PLoS One.* 2015;10:e0133488.
107. Kudo M. Proposal of Primary Endpoints for TACE Combination Trials with Systemic Therapy: Lessons Learned from 5 Negative Trials and the Positive TACTICS Trial. *Liver Cancer.* 2018;7:225–234.
108. Kudo M, Ueshima K, Ikeda M, Torimura T, Tanabe N, Aikata H, et al. Randomised, multicentre prospective trial of transarterial chemoembolisation (TACE) plus sorafenib as compared with TACE alone in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: TACTICS trial. *Gut [Internet].* 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/gutjnl-2019-318934>
109. Kudo M, Kubo S, Takayasu K, Sakamoto M, Tanaka M, Ikai I, et al. Response Evaluation Criteria in Cancer of the Liver (RECICL) proposed by the Liver Cancer Study Group of Japan (2009 Revised Version). *Hepatol. Res.* 2010;40:686–692.
110. Kudo M. A New Treatment Option for Intermediate-Stage Hepatocellular Carcinoma with High Tumor Burden: Initial Lenvatinib Therapy with Subsequent Selective TACE. *Liver Cancer.* 2019;8:299–311.
111. Therasse P, Arbuck SG, Eisenhauer EA, Wanders J, Kaplan RS, Rubinstein L, et al. New guidelines to evaluate the response to treatment in solid tumors. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer, National Cancer Institute of the United States, National Cancer Institute of Canada. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute.* 2000;92:205–216.
112. Lencioni R. New data supporting modified RECIST (mRECIST) for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2013;19:1312–1314.
113. Nishino M, Giobbie-Hurder A, Gargano M, Suda M, Ramaiya NH, Hodi FS. Developing a common language for tumor response to immunotherapy: immune-related response criteria using unidimensional measurements. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2013;19:3936–3943.
114. Bohnsack O, Hoos A, Ludajic K. Adaptation and modification of the immune related response criteria (IRRC): IrRECIST. *J. Clin. Orthod.* 2014;32:e22121–e22121.
115. Hodi FS, Ballinger M, Lyons B, Soria J-C, Nishino M, Tabernero J, et al. Immune-Modified Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumors (imRECIST): Refining Guidelines to Assess the Clinical Benefit of Cancer Immunotherapy. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:850–858.
116. Ikeda M, Sung MW, Kudo M, Kobayashi M, Baron AD, Finn RS, et al. A phase 1b

- 1
2 trial of lenvatinib (LEN) plus pembrolizumab (PEM) in patients (pts) with unresectable
3 hepatocellular carcinoma (uHCC). *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:4076–4076.
4
- 5 117. Moehler M, Heo J, Lee HC, Tak WY, Chao Y, Paik SW, et al. Vaccinia-based
6 oncolytic immunotherapy Pexastimogene Devacirepvec in patients with advanced
7 hepatocellular carcinoma after sorafenib failure: a randomized multicenter Phase IIb
8 trial (TRAVERSE). *Oncoimmunology.* 2019;8:1615817.
9
- 10 118. Heo J, Reid T, Ruo L, Breitbart CJ, Rose S, Bloomston M, et al. Randomized
11 dose-finding clinical trial of oncolytic immunotherapeutic vaccinia JX-594 in liver
12 cancer. *Nat. Med.* 2013;1–10.
13
- 14 119. Llovet JM, Zucman-Rossi J, Pikarsky E, Sangro B, Schwartz M, Sherman M, et al.
15 Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nature Reviews Disease Primers.* 2016;2:16018–16023.
16
- 17 120. Bruix J, Sherman M, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases.
18 Management of hepatocellular carcinoma: an update. *Hepatology.* 2011;53:1020–
19 1022.
20
- 21 121. Qin S, Bai Y, Lim HY, Thongprasert S, Chao Y, Fan J, et al. Randomized,
22 multicenter, open-label study of oxaliplatin plus fluorouracil/leucovorin versus
23 doxorubicin as palliative chemotherapy in patients with advanced hepatocellular
24 carcinoma from Asia. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3501–3508.
25
- 26 122. Abou-Alfa GK, Niedzwieski D, Knox JJ, Kaubisch A, Posey J, Tan BR, et al. Phase
27 III randomized study of sorafenib plus doxorubicin versus sorafenib in patients with
28 advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC): CALGB 80802 (Alliance). *J. Clin. Oncol.*
29 2016;34:192–192.
30
- 31 123. Kudo M, Ueshima K, Yokosuka O, Ogasawara S, Obi S, Izumi N, et al. Sorafenib
32 plus low-dose cisplatin and fluorouracil hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy versus
33 sorafenib alone in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (SILIUS): a
34 randomised, open label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2018;3:424–
35 432.
36
- 37 124. Yeo W, Mok TS, Zee B, Leung TWT, Lai PBS, Lau WY, et al. A randomized phase
38 III study of doxorubicin versus cisplatin/interferon alpha-2b/doxorubicin/fluorouracil
39 (PIAF) combination chemotherapy for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Natl.*
40 *Cancer Inst.* 2005;97:1532–1538.
41
- 42 125. Chow PK h., Tai B-C, Tan C-K, Machin D, Win KM, Johnson PJ, et al. High-dose
43 tamoxifen in the treatment of inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma: A multicenter
44 randomized controlled trial. *Hepatology.* 2002;36:1221–1226.
45
- 46 126. Johnson PJ, Qin S, Park J-W, Poon RTP, Raoul J-L, Philip PA, et al. Brivanib
47 versus sorafenib as first-line therapy in patients with unresectable, advanced
48 hepatocellular carcinoma: results from the randomized phase III BRISK-FL study. *J.*
49 *Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3517–3524.
50
- 51 127. Llovet JM, Decaens T, Raoul JL, Boucher E, Kudo M, Chang C, et al. Brivanib in
52 patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma who were intolerant to sorafenib or
53 for whom sorafenib failed: results from the randomized phase III BRISK-PS study. *J.*
54 *Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3509–3516.
55
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 128. Cainap C, Qin S, Huang W-T, Chung IJ, Pan H, Cheng Y, et al. Linifanib versus
3 Sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: results of a
4 randomized phase III trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;33:172–179.
5
- 6 129. Zhu AX, Rosmorduc O, Evans TRJ, Ross PJ, Santoro A, Carrilho FJ, et al.
7 SEARCH: a phase III, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of sorafenib
8 plus erlotinib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
9 2015;33:559–566.
10
- 11 130. Zhu AX, Kudo M, Assenat E, Cattan S, Kang Y-K, Lim HY, et al. Effect of
12 everolimus on survival in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma after failure of
13 sorafenib: the EVOLVE-1 randomized clinical trial. *JAMA.* 2014;312:57–67.
14
- 15 131. Rimassa L, Assenat E, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Pracht M, Zagonel V, Mathurin P, et
16 al. Tivantinib for second-line treatment of MET-high, advanced hepatocellular
17 carcinoma (METIV-HCC): a final analysis of a phase 3, randomised, placebo-
18 controlled study. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018 [cited 2018 Apr 4];Available from:
19 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30146-3](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30146-3)
20
21
22
- 23 132. Merle P, Blanc J-F, Phelip J-M, Pelletier G, Bronowicki J-P, Touchefeu Y, et al.
24 Doxorubicin-loaded nanoparticles for patients with advanced hepatocellular
25 carcinoma after sorafenib treatment failure (RELIVE): a phase 3 randomised
26 controlled trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2019;4:454–465.
27
28
- 29 133. Abou-Alfa GK, Qin S, Ryou B-Y, Lu S-N, Yen C-J, Feng Y-H, et al. Phase III
30 randomized study of second line ADI-PEG 20 plus best supportive care versus
31 placebo plus best supportive care in patients with advanced hepatocellular
32 carcinoma. *Ann. Oncol.* 2018;29:1402–1408.
33
- 34 134. Roche's Tecentriq in combination with Avastin increased overall survival and
35 progression-free survival in people with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma
36 [Internet]. [cited 2019 Nov 4];Available from:
37 <https://www.roche.com/media/releases/med-cor-2019-10-21.htm>
38
39
- 40 135. Zhu AX, Park JO, Ryou B-Y, Yen C-J, Poon R, Pastorelli D, et al. Ramucirumab
41 versus placebo as second-line treatment in patients with advanced hepatocellular
42 carcinoma following first-line therapy with sorafenib (REACH): a randomised, double-
43 blind, multicentre, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* 2015;16:859–870.
44
- 45 136. Llovet JM, Pena CEA, Lathia CD, Shan M, Meinhardt G, Bruix J, et al. Plasma
46 Biomarkers as Predictors of Outcome in Patients with Advanced Hepatocellular
47 Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2012;18:2290–2300.
48
49
- 50 137. Vilgrain V, Pereira H, Assenat E, Guiu B, Ilonca AD, Pageaux G-P, et al. Efficacy
51 and safety of selective internal radiotherapy with yttrium-90 resin microspheres
52 compared with sorafenib in locally advanced and inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma
53 (SARAH): an open-label randomised controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet].
54 2017;Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(17\)30683-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30683-6)
55
56
- 57 138. Chow PKH, Gandhi M, Tan S-B, Khin MW, Khasbazar A, Ong J, et al. SIRveNIB:
58 Selective Internal Radiation Therapy Versus Sorafenib in Asia-Pacific Patients With
59 Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:1913–1921.
60
139. Ricke J, Sangro B, Amthauer H, Bargellini I, Bartenstein P, De Toni E, et al. The

- 1
2 impact of combining Selective Internal Radiation Therapy (SIRT) with Sorafenib on
3 overall survival in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: The Soramic trial
4 palliative cohort. *J. Hepatol.* 2018;68:S102.
5
- 6
7 140. Cheng A-L, Kang Y-K, Chen Z, Tsao C-J, Qin S, Kim JS, et al. Efficacy and safety
8 of sorafenib in patients in the Asia-Pacific region with advanced hepatocellular
9 carcinoma: a phase III randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*
10 *Oncol.* 2009;10:25–34.
11
- 12 141. He M, Li Q, Zou R, Shen J, Fang W, Tan G, et al. Sorafenib Plus Hepatic Arterial
13 Infusion of Oxaliplatin, Fluorouracil, and Leucovorin vs Sorafenib Alone for
14 Hepatocellular Carcinoma With Portal Vein Invasion: A Randomized Clinical Trial.
15 *JAMA Oncol* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
16 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.0250>
17
18
- 19 142. Jouve J-L, Lecomte T, Bouché O, Barbier E, Khemissa Akouz F, Riachi G, et al.
20 Pravastatin combination with sorafenib does not improve survival in advanced
21 hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2019;71:516–522.
22
- 23 143. Abou-Alfa GK, Shi Q, Knox JJ, Kaubisch A, Niedzwiecki D, Posey J, et al.
24 Assessment of Treatment With Sorafenib Plus Doxorubicin vs Sorafenib Alone in
25 Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Phase 3 CALGB 80802
26 Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
27 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.2792>
28
29
- 30 144. Torre LA, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer
31 statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 2015;65:87–108.
32
- 33 145. Gan HK, You B, Pond GR, Chen EX. Assumptions of expected benefits in
34 randomized phase III trials evaluating systemic treatments for cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer*
35 *Inst.* 2012;104:590–598.
36
- 37 146. Oxnard GR, Wilcox KH, Gonen M, Polotsky M, Hirsch BR, Schwartz LH. Response
38 Rate as a Regulatory End Point in Single-Arm Studies of Advanced Solid Tumors.
39 *JAMA Oncol.* 2016;2:772–779.
40
41
- 42 147. Sangro B, Gomez-Martin C, de la Mata M, Iñarrairaegui M, Garralda E, Barrera P,
43 et al. A clinical trial of CTLA-4 blockade with tremelimumab in patients with
44 hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic hepatitis C. *J. Hepatol.* 2013;59:81–88.
45
- 46 148. Qin SK, Ren ZG, Meng ZQ, Chen ZD, Chai XL, Xiong JP, et al. LBA27A
47 randomized multicentered phase II study to evaluate SHR-1210 (PD-1 antibody) in
48 subjects with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) who failed or intolerable to
49 prior systemic treatment. *Ann. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018 [cited 2019 Sep 23];29.
50 Available from:
51 https://academic.oup.com/annonc/article/29/suppl_8/mdy424.029/5141688
52
53
- 54 149. Finn RS, Ryoo B-Y, Merle P, Kudo M, Bouattour M, Lim H-Y, et al. Results of
55 KEYNOTE-240: phase 3 study of pembrolizumab (Pembro) vs best supportive care
56 (BSC) for second line therapy in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). *J. Clin.*
57 *Orthod.* 2019;37:4004–4004.
58
59
- 60 150. Duffy AG, Ulahannan SV, Makorova-Rusher O, Rahma O, Wedemeyer H, Pratt D,
et al. Tremelimumab in combination with ablation in patients with advanced

- 1
2 hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2017;66:545–551.
3
- 4 151. Yau T, Kang Y-K, Kim T-Y, El-Khoueiry AB, Santoro A, Sangro B, et al. Nivolumab
5 (NIVO) + ipilimumab (IPI) combination therapy in patients (pts) with advanced
6 hepatocellular carcinoma (aHCC): Results from CheckMate 040. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
7 2019;37:4012–4012.
8
- 9 152. Greten TF, Lai CW, Li G, Staveley-O’Carroll KF. Targeted and Immune-Based
10 Therapies for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Gastroenterology.* 2019;156:510–524.
11
- 12 153. Greten TF, Sangro B. Targets for immunotherapy of liver cancer. *J. Hepatol.*
13 [Internet]. 2017; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2017.09.007>
14
- 15 154. Anagnostou V, Yarchoan M, Hansen AR, Wang H, Verde F, Sharon E, et al.
16 Immuno-oncology Trial Endpoints: Capturing Clinically Meaningful Activity. *Clin.*
17 *Cancer Res.* 2017;23:4959–4969.
18
- 19 155. Ritchie G, Gasper H, Man J, Lord S, Marschner I, Friedlander M, et al. Defining the
20 Most Appropriate Primary End Point in Phase 2 Trials of Immune Checkpoint
21 Inhibitors for Advanced Solid Cancers: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis.
22 *JAMA Oncol.* 2018;4:522–528.
23
- 24 156. Simon RM, Paik S, Hayes DF. Use of Archived Specimens in Evaluation of
25 Prognostic and Predictive Biomarkers. *JNCI Journal of the National Cancer Institute.*
26 2009;101:1446–1452.
27
- 28 157. Mandrekar SJ, Sargent DJ. Clinical trial designs for predictive biomarker validation:
29 theoretical considerations and practical challenges. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2009;27:4027–
30 4034.
31
- 32 158. Mandrekar SJ, Sargent DJ. Genomic advances and their impact on clinical trial
33 design. *Genome Med.* 2009;1:69.
34
- 35 159. Renfro LA, An M-W, Mandrekar SJ. Precision oncology: A new era of cancer
36 clinical trials. *Cancer Lett.* 2017;387:121–126.
37
- 38 160. Biomarker definition NCI [Internet]. Available from:
39 <https://www.cancer.gov/publications/dictionaries/cancer-terms/def/biomarker>
40
- 41 161. Rebouissou S, La Bella T, Rekik S, Imbeaud S, Calatayud A-L, Rohr-Udilova N, et
42 al. Proliferation Markers Are Associated with MET Expression in Hepatocellular
43 Carcinoma and Predict Tivantinib Sensitivity In Vitro. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet].
44 2017; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-3118>
45
- 46 162. Zhu AX, Baron AD, Malfertheiner P, Kudo M, Kawazoe S, Pezet D, et al.
47 Ramucirumab as Second-Line Treatment in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular
48 Carcinoma: Analysis of REACH Trial Results by Child-Pugh Score. *JAMA Oncol.*
49 2017;3:235–243.
50
- 51 163. Kim RD, Sarker D, Meyer T, Yau T, Macarulla T, Park J-W, et al. First-in-Human
52 Phase I Study of Fisogatinib (BLU-554) Validates Aberrant Fibroblast Growth Factor
53 19 Signaling as a Driver Event in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cancer Discov.*
54 [Internet]. 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0555>
55
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 164. Sia D, Jiao Y, Martinez-Quetglas I, Kuchuk O, Villacorta-Martin C, Castro de Moura
3 M, et al. Identification of an Immune-specific Class of Hepatocellular Carcinoma,
4 Based on Molecular Features. *Gastroenterology*. 2017;153:812–826.
5
- 6 165. Finn RS, Kudo M, Cheng A-L, Wyrwicz L, Ngan R, Blanc J-F, et al. LBA30Analysis
7 of serum biomarkers (BM) in patients (pts) from a phase 3 study of lenvatinib (LEN)
8 vs sorafenib (SOR) as first-line treatment for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma
9 (uHCC). *Ann. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2017 [cited 2019 Jul 26];28. Available from:
10 https://academic.oup.com/annonc/article-abstract/28/suppl_5/mdx440.022/4109934
11
12
- 13 166. Kaseb AO, Carmagnani Pestana R, Vence LM, Blando JM, Singh S, Ikoma N, et al.
14 Randomized, open-label, perioperative phase II study evaluating nivolumab alone
15 versus nivolumab plus ipilimumab in patients with resectable HCC. *J. Clin. Orthod.*
16 2019;37:185–185.
17
- 18 167. Kwak EL, Bang Y-J, Camidge DR, Shaw AT, Solomon B, Maki RG, et al.
19 Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
20 2010;363:1693–1703.
21
22
- 23 168. Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, Gurubhagavatula S, Okimoto RA, Brannigan BW, et
24 al. Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying
25 responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
26 2004;350:2129–2139.
27
28
- 29 169. Slamon DJ, Leyland-Jones B, Shak S, Fuchs H, Paton V, Bajamonde A, et al. Use
30 of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast
31 cancer that overexpresses HER2. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2001;344:783–792.
32
- 33 170. Finn RS, Martin M, Rugo HS, Jones S, Im S-A, Gelmon K, et al. Palbociclib and
34 Letrozole in Advanced Breast Cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2016;375:1925–1936.
35
- 36 171. Demetri GD, von Mehren M, Blanke CD, Van den Abbeele AD, Eisenberg B,
37 Roberts PJ, et al. Efficacy and safety of imatinib mesylate in advanced
38 gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2002;347:472–480.
39
40
- 41 172. Druker BJ, Guilhot F, O'Brien SG, Gathmann I, Kantarjian H, Gattermann N, et al.
42 Five-year follow-up of patients receiving imatinib for chronic myeloid leukemia. *N.*
43 *Engl. J. Med.* 2006;355:2408–2417.
44
- 45 173. Pantel K. Blood-Based Analysis of Circulating Cell-Free DNA and Tumor Cells for
46 Early Cancer Detection. *PLoS Med.* 2016;13:e1002205.
47
48
- 49 174. Mandrekar SJ, An M-W, Sargent DJ. A review of phase II trial designs for initial
50 marker validation. *Contemp. Clin. Trials.* 2013;36:597–604.
51
- 52 175. Labgaa I, Villanueva A. Liquid biopsy in liver cancer. *Discov. Med.* 2015;19:263–
53 273.
54
- 55 176. Corcoran RB, Chabner BA. Application of Cell-free DNA Analysis to Cancer
56 Treatment. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018;379:1754–1765.
57
- 58 177. Wan JCM, Massie C, Garcia-Corbacho J, Mouliere F, Brenton JD, Caldas C, et al.
59 Liquid biopsies come of age: towards implementation of circulating tumour DNA. *Nat.*
60 *Rev. Cancer.* 2017;17:223–238.

- 1
2 178. Office of the Commissioner. FDA approves first blood test to detect gene mutation
3 associated with non-small cell lung cancer [Internet]. 2016 [cited 2019 May
4 16]; Available from: [https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-](https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer)
5 [approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer](https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer)
6
- 7
8 179. Labgaa I, Villacorta-Martin C, D'Avola D, Craig AJ, von Felden J, Martins-Filho SN,
9 et al. A pilot study of ultra-deep targeted sequencing of plasma DNA identifies driver
10 mutations in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene*. 2018;37:3740–3752.
11
- 12 180. Qu C, Wang Y, Wang P, Chen K, Wang M, Zeng H, et al. Detection of early-stage
13 hepatocellular carcinoma in asymptomatic HBsAg-seropositive individuals by liquid
14 biopsy. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
15 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1819799116>
16
- 17
18 181. Xu R-H, Wei W, Krawczyk M, Wang W, Luo H, Flagg K, et al. Circulating tumour
19 DNA methylation markers for diagnosis and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma.
20 *Nat. Mater.* 2017;16:1155–1161.
21
- 22 182. Bhan I, Mosesso K, Goyal L, Philipp J, Kalinich M, Franses JW, et al. Detection and
23 Analysis of Circulating Epithelial Cells in Liquid Biopsies From Patients With Liver
24 Disease. *Gastroenterology* [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
25 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2018.09.020>
26
- 27
28 183. Oh CR, Kong S-Y, Im H-S, Kim HJ, Kim MK, Yoon K-A, et al. Genome-wide copy
29 number alteration and VEGFA amplification of circulating cell-free DNA as a
30 biomarker in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma patients treated with Sorafenib.
31 *BMC Cancer*. 2019;19:292.
32
- 33 184. Lim HY, Merle P, Weiss KH, Yau TC, Ross P, Mazzaferro V, et al. Phase II Studies
34 with Refametinib or Refametinib plus Sorafenib in Patients with RAS-mutated
35 Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
36 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-3588>
37
- 38
39 185. Chie W-C, Blazeby JM, Hsiao C-F, Chiu H-C, Poon RT, Mikoshiba N, et al.
40 International cross-cultural field validation of an European Organization for Research
41 and Treatment of Cancer questionnaire module for patients with primary liver cancer,
42 the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer quality-of-life
43 questionnaire HCC18. *Hepatology*. 2012;55:1122–1129.
44
- 45 186. Blazeby JM, Currie E, Zee BCY, Chie W-C, Poon RT, Garden OJ, et al.
46 Development of a questionnaire module to supplement the EORTC QLQ-C30 to
47 assess quality of life in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, the EORTC QLQ-
48 HCC18. *Eur. J. Cancer*. 2004;40:2439–2444.
49
- 50
51 187. Huang G, Chen X, Lau WY, Shen F, Wang RY, Yuan SX, et al. Quality of life after
52 surgical resection compared with radiofrequency ablation for small hepatocellular
53 carcinomas. *Br. J. Surg.* 2014;101:1006–1015.
54
- 55 188. Salem R, Gilbertsen M, Butt Z, Memon K, Vouche M, Hickey R, et al. Increased
56 quality of life among hepatocellular carcinoma patients treated with radioembolization,
57 compared with chemoembolization. *Clin. Gastroenterol. Hepatol.* 2013;11:1358–
58 1365.e1.
59
- 60 189. Kudo M, Trevisani F, Abou-Alfa GK, Rimassa L. Hepatocellular Carcinoma:

- 1
2 Therapeutic Guidelines and Medical Treatment. *Liver Cancer*. 2016;6:16–26.
3
- 4 190. Omata M, Cheng A-L, Kokudo N, Kudo M, Lee JM, Jia J, et al. Asia-Pacific clinical
5 practice guidelines on the management of hepatocellular carcinoma: a 2017 update.
6 *Hepatol. Int.* 2017;11:317–370.
7
- 8 191. Kokudo N, Takemura N, Hasegawa K, Takayama T, Kubo S, Shimada M, et al.
9 Clinical practice guidelines for hepatocellular carcinoma: The Japan Society of
10 Hepatology 2017 (4th JSH-HCC guidelines) 2019 update. *Hepatol. Res.* [Internet].
11 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/hepr.13411>
12
13
- 14 192. Surveillance group, Diagnosis group, Staging group, Surgery group, Local ablation
15 group, TACE/TARE/HAI group, et al. Management consensus guideline for
16 hepatocellular carcinoma: 2016 updated by the Taiwan Liver Cancer Association and
17 the Gastroenterological Society of Taiwan. *J. Formos. Med. Assoc.* 2018;117:381–
18 403.
19
- 20 193. Zhou J, Sun H-C, Wang Z, Cong W-M, Wang J-H, Zeng M-S, et al. Guidelines for
21 Diagnosis and Treatment of Primary Liver Cancer in China (2017 Edition). *Liver*
22 *Cancer*. 2018;7:235–260.
23
24
- 25 194. Korean Liver Cancer Association, National Cancer Center. 2018 Korean Liver
26 Cancer Association-National Cancer Center Korea Practice Guidelines for the
27 Management of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Gut Liver*. 2019;13:227–299.
28
- 29 195. Sharma P, Allison JP. The future of immune checkpoint therapy. *Science*.
30 2015;348:56–61.
31
32
- 33 196. Fukumura D, Kloepper J, Amoozgar Z, Duda DG, Jain RK. Enhancing cancer
34 immunotherapy using antiangiogenics: opportunities and challenges. *Nat. Rev. Clin.*
35 *Oncol.* 2018;15:325–340.
36
- 37 197. Kalbasi A, Ribas A. Tumour-intrinsic resistance to immune checkpoint blockade.
38 *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 2020;20:25–39.
39
- 40 198. Ruiz de Galarreta M, Bresnahan E, Molina-Sanchez P, Lindblad KE, Maier B, Sia
41 D, et al. β -catenin activation promotes immune escape and resistance to anti-PD-1
42 therapy in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Discov.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
43 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0074>
44
45
- 46 199. Pinyol R, Sia D, Llovet JM. Immune exclusion-Wnt/CTNNB1 class predicts
47 resistance to immunotherapies in HCC. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2019; Available
48 from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-3778>
49
- 50 200. Harding JJ, Nandakumar S, Armenia J, Khalil DN, Albano M, Ly M, et al.
51 Prospective Genotyping of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Clinical Implications of Next
52 Generation Sequencing for Matching Patients to Targeted and Immune Therapies.
53 *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-2293>
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

1
2 **Title: Trial Design and Endpoints in hepatocellular carcinoma: AASLD Consensus**
3 **Conference.**
4
5

6
7 **Authors:** Josep M. Llovet^{1,2,3} Augusto Villanueva¹, Jorge A. Marrero⁴, Myron Schwartz¹,
8 Tim Meyer⁵, Peter R. Galle⁶, Riccardo Lencioni^{7,8}, Tim F. Greten⁹, Masatoshi Kudo¹⁰,
9 Sumithra J. Mandrekar¹¹, Andrew X. Zhu^{12,13}, Richard S. Finn¹⁴, Lewis R. Roberts¹⁵, for
10 AASLD Panel of experts on Trial Design in HCC.
11
12

13
14
15 **Affiliations:** ¹Mount Sinai Liver Cancer Program, Division of Liver Diseases, Tisch Cancer
16 Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, NY, USA; ²Translational
17 Research in Hepatic Oncology, Liver Unit, IDIBAPS, Hospital Clinic, University of
18 Barcelona, Catalonia, Spain; ³Institució Catalana d'Estudis Avançats (ICREA), Barcelona,
19 Catalonia, Spain. ⁴UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, Texas; ⁵Dept Oncology,
20 University College London Cancer Institute; ⁶I. Dept. of Internal Medicine, Mainz University
21 Medical Center, Mainz, Germany; ⁷Department of Radiology, University of Pisa School of
22 Medicine; ⁸ Miami Cancer Institute, Miami, FL; ⁹Gastrointestinal Malignancy Section,
23 Thoracic and Gastrointestinal Oncology Branch, Center for Cancer Research, National
24 Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland; ¹⁰Department of
25 Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Kindai University Faculty of Medicine, Osaka-Sayama,
26 Osaka, Japan. ¹¹Department of Health Sciences Research, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN.
27 ¹²Massachusetts General Hospital Cancer Center, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA,
28 USA; ¹³Jiahui International Cancer Center, Shanghai, China; ¹⁴ Geffen School of Medicine
29 at UCLA, California; ¹⁵Gastroenterology & Hepatology Dept. Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN.
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37

38 **Conflict of interest:** Josep M Llovet is receiving research support from Bayer HealthCare
39 Pharmaceuticals, Eisai Inc, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Ipsen and Boehringer-Ingelheim and
40 consulting fees from Eisai Inc, Merck, Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals, Bristol-Myers
41 Squibb, Celsion Corporation, Eli Lilly, Ipsen, Glycotest, Roche, AstraZeneca, Sirtex, Nucleix
42 and Can-Fite. Augusto Villanueva has received consulting fees from Guidepoint and
43 Fujifilm; advisory board fees from Exact Sciences, Nucleix, Gilead and NGM
44 Pharmaceuticals, and research support from Eisai Pharmaceuticals. Jorge Marrero reports
45 consulting from Glycotest. Peter Galle is receiving research support from Bayer HealthCare
46 Pharmaceuticals and consulting fees from Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals, Bristol-
47 Myers Squibb, Eisai Inc, Merck, Eli Lilly, Ipsen, Roche, AstraZeneca, Sirtex. Tim Meyer has
48 received advisory board fees from Eisai, Roche, AstraZeneca, Ipsen, BTG and Tarveda.
49 Masatoshi Kudo is receiving lecture fee from Eisai Inc, Bayer, MSD, research support from
50 Eisai Inc, Gilead, Takeda, Otsuka, Taiho, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Ono Pharmaceutical and
51 consulting fees from Bayer, Eisai, Ono, MSD, BMS, Eli Lilly, Roche, AstraZeneca, Chugai.
52 Andrew Zhu reports research funding from Bayer, Bristol-Myers Squibb, Eli Lilly, Merck, and
53 Novartis, and is a consultant/advisory board member for AstraZeneca, Bayer, Bristol-Myers
54 Squibb, Eisai, Eli Lilly, Exelixis, Merck, Novartis, Roche, and Sanofi. Richard Finn reports
55 consulting fees from AstraZeneca, Bayer, BristolMyersSquibb, CStone, Eisai, Eli Lilly,
56
57
58
59
60

1
2 Merck, Novartis, Pfizer, Roche/Genentech. Lewis Roberts reports research funding from
3 Bayer, BTG International, Exact Sciences, Gilead Sciences, Glycotest, Redhill Biopharma,
4 TARGET PharmaSolutions, and Wako Diagnostics, and is a consultant/advisory board
5 member for Bayer, Exact Sciences, Gilead Sciences, GRAIL, QED Therapeutics, and
6 TAVEC.
7
8

9 All other co-authors do not have conflicts to disclose.
10
11
12

13 **Acknowledgements:** Josep M Llovet is supported by European Commission (EC)/Horizon
14 2020 Program (HEPCAR, Ref. 667273-2), EIT Health (CRISH2, Ref. 18053), Accelerator
15 Award (*CRUCK, AEEC, AIRC*) (HUNTER, Ref. C9380/A26813), National Cancer Institute
16 (P30-CA196521), U.S. Department of Defense (CA150272P3), Samuel Waxman Cancer
17 Research Foundation, Spanish National Health Institute (SAF2016-76390) and the
18 Generalitat de Catalunya/AGAUR (SGR-1358). Augusto Villanueva is supported by the
19 Department of Defense (CA150272P3). Tim Greten is supported by the Intramural
20 Research Program of the NIH, National Cancer Institute, Center for Cancer Research.
21 Sumithra J. Mandrekar is supported by a P30CA15083 grant. Andrew Zhu has received
22 research support from V Foundation for Cancer Research, and DOD of Defense Team
23 Science Translational Award. Richard Finn is supported by US Dept of Defense IDEA
24 Award. Tim Meyer is supported by the NIHR UCLH Biomedical Research Centre. Lewis
25 Roberts is supported by the National Cancer Institute (P50 CA210964).
26
27
28
29

30 **Correspondence:** Josep M. Llovet, MD, PhD, FAASLD. Mount Sinai Liver Cancer
31 Program, Division of Liver Diseases, Tisch Cancer Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at
32 Mount Sinai, Madison Ave 1425. 11F-70. Box 1123, New York, NY10029. USA. E-mail:
33 josep.llovet@mssm.edu
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

Abstract

Proper trial design is critical for the success of clinical investigations. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is a complex disease that has several unique properties. In 2008, after the approval of sorafenib, a panel of experts proposed guidelines for trial design and endpoints in HCC that have been instrumental during the last decade and provided a framework to allow an homogeneous analysis of reported investigations. Since then, several phase III studies have been reported and novel challenges have emerged. A panel of experts conveyed by AASLD organized a Special Topic Conference on trial design and endpoints to address those emerging challenges. This review summarizes the analysis and conclusions of those discussions and provides novel recommendations on the selection endpoints, stratification variables and targeted populations in the complex arena of HCC. We have covered the full spectrum of the disease, from surveillance/ chemoprevention, to neoadjuvant and adjuvant trials after curative therapies, and trials in intermediate and advanced stages of HCC. We explore the prospects for incorporating biomarkers and liquid biopsy into conventional clinical trials. In addition, we address the need for obtaining tissue and blood samples in all investigations and propose novel primary endpoints such as progression free survival with restrictive rules and patient reported outcomes. This up-dated set of recommendations is timely considering the advent of more potent combination therapies in all areas of HCC management, the increase in adverse events associated with those combinations, and the evidence that several lines of effective treatments will benefit a given patient. We herein articulate a framework to facilitate capturing the efficacy of novel therapeutic strategies with the goal of improving the outcomes of patients suffering from this disease.

Introduction

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the fourth leading cause of cancer-related mortality worldwide(1,2). This neoplasm has some unique characteristics. It occurs in most cases complicating underlying cirrhosis, has specific non-invasive criteria for diagnosis, follows a unique staging system and historically has been resistant to conventional chemotherapy. Several treatments have achieved adoption as standard of care according to clinical practice guidelines, including potentially curative therapies (i.e. resection, liver transplantation and local ablation) for early tumors, transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) for intermediate stage tumors, and systemic drugs for advanced tumors in front line (sorafenib and lenvatinib) and second line (regorafenib, cabozantinib and ramucirumab)(3–5). Life expectancy has improved progressively in all stages of the disease. Effective implementation of surveillance for patients at risk of developing HCC and access to current proven therapies has been a milestone. Overall, median survival times beyond 5 years are expected for early stages, about 20-30 months for intermediate stages, and between 10-16 months for advanced stage HCC [Fig. 1(3,4,6)]. Novel drugs and combinations continue to enter the research arena to address unmet medical needs. All these research activities require precise endpoints and tools for measuring clinical benefits.

Thus, clinical trial design has become a major focus of attention in HCC research. Since randomized controlled trials are the main source of evidence for drug approvals in oncology, it is of paramount relevance to understand the critical endpoints and tools for measuring them, as well as optimal strategies for identifying and enrolling target populations and for patient stratification. It has become evident that a deep understanding of factors determining HCC outcomes and trial design is required to achieve optimal results. There are trials with a non-inferiority design that have been positive, and lead to drug approval, while others demonstrate superior outcomes in surrogate end-points, such as progression free survival (PFS) or patient reported outcomes but not in the primary endpoint of overall survival. Some recent trials have also been reported to be statistically negative but “clinically positive”. It is important to understand the reasons for the failure or success of a trial in order to move the field forward. In addition, while several positive phase III trials for advanced HCC have recently changed clinical practice (7–11), no major advances have occurred in the area of surveillance and early detection, adjuvant therapies after resection/ablation or management of intermediate stage HCC over the last 15 years. The lack of effective novel drugs/devices may be the cause of negative studies in these areas, but suboptimal trial design may also have jeopardized the likelihood of a positive result. With this challenge in mind, the Hepatobiliary Neoplasia Special Interest Group of the American Association for the Study of Liver Disease (AASLD) organized a Single Topic Conference in Atlanta in 2019 to address these issues. This position paper summarizes the major concepts discussed in the conference with the aim of updating the proposals previously reported by a similar AASLD panel in 2008(12).

Overview on trial design and endpoints

Clinical trials are essential to establish the clinical efficacy of new therapeutic interventions. They are instrumental in developing clinical practice guidelines and form the basis for evidence-based medicine(13). An adequate clinical trial design is crucial, as an effective drug can be discarded due to a poor trial design and *vice-versa*. The main considerations when designing a clinical trial are to: a) select a well-defined target patient population (i.e., inclusion and exclusion criteria), b) pre-specify clear endpoints (primary and secondary) and data analysis plan, c) specify randomization and allocation method; and d) secure efficacy of randomization (stratification at enrollment for prognostic variables). Based on these and other variables, the quality of clinical trials can be quantified using different scores such as

1
2 the Jadad score(14), the Delphi List(15), the CONSORT statement(16,17), and the
3 Cochrane Back Review Group criteria(18). Until the SHARP trial(11), which established the
4 benefit of sorafenib in advanced stages HCC patients, the quality of the trials conducted in
5 HCC was commonly modest. A systematic review found that only 50% of the clinical trials
6 reported between 2002 and 2005 in HCC were deemed high quality as per the modified
7 Jadad score(19). The 2008 position paper resulting from the AASLD conference provided a
8 useful framework for academic centers, industry partners and regulators on the design of
9 trials in HCC(12). **Subsequently, the quality of clinical trials assessing systemic therapies
10 has significantly improved.** There has been less activity in terms of high-end clinical trials in
11 other treatment areas. This position paper will extensively discuss the singularities of trial
12 design in every clinical aspect of HCC management.
13
14

15 In clinical trials, the benefit of an intervention is quantified using endpoints, which are
16 predefined events that once reached exclude the patient from further evaluation within the
17 trial. There are 3 main types of endpoints: hard, surrogate and patient-reported, all
18 extensively described elsewhere(20). Hard endpoints are well defined and easy to measure
19 objectively. The archetypes of a hard endpoint are overall survival (OS) or cancer-related
20 survival. Surrogate endpoints, such as progression-free survival or time to progression,
21 partially rely on the quantification of tumor response, generally using imaging techniques
22 and pre-specified criteria(21). Surrogate endpoints are more vulnerable than hard
23 endpoints, but they have several advantages including their convenience in terms of event
24 accumulation and trial feasibility. Patient-reported endpoints, sometimes referred as soft
25 endpoints, are subjective measures such as quality of life (QoL), in most instances obtained
26 from questionnaires. Overall recommendations of trial design and endpoints in HCC are
27 detailed in **Table 1**, whereas expected outcomes for standard of care therapeutic
28 interventions within these trials are summarized in **Table 2**.
29
30
31

32 Endpoints

33 OS is defined by the time between patient randomization and death from any cause. OS is
34 usually recommended as the primary endpoint for randomized phase III clinical trials(12).
35 OS is the endpoint most frequently used by regulatory agencies to approve drugs as it is
36 objective and clinically relevant. **In HCC, as most patients suffer from concomitant cirrhosis,
37 death can result from competing risks, mainly liver toxicity and failure. This fact underscores
38 the need for detailed assessments of safety with any intervention in this population. It is
39 important to capture adverse events in early phase clinical studies as well as in larger
40 randomized studies. Failures in phase 3 studies have been seen from new agents that are
41 more toxic in an HCC population than in other tumor types(22). The competing risk of
42 cirrhosis can introduce bias when evaluating the anti-tumoral activity of a therapeutic
43 intervention, but it can be easily controlled by imposing stringent inclusion criteria in terms
44 of liver function (i.e., Child-Pugh score A without hepatic decompensation). OS has some
45 limitations such as the long follow-up time required to capture the number of events needed
46 to verify significantly improved survival in the experimental arm(23). This can be a critical
47 limitation when exploring interventions at early or intermediate stages. Also, OS can be
48 confounded by sequential therapies received by patients after tumor progression, which for
49 instance affected 30% of patients enrolled in the lenvatinib trial(7) and up to 50% of patients
50 in the Checkmate 459 comparing nivolumab vs sorafenib(24). Hence, there is a need to
51 develop surrogate endpoints, which are defined as outcomes not inherently meaningful from
52 the clinical standpoint, but thought to accurately predict hard outcomes such as OS(25).
53
54
55
56
57
58
59**

60 The main surrogate endpoints in oncology are progression-free survival (PFS), time-to-
progression (TTP) and objective response rate (ORR). PFS is the time between patient

1
2 randomization and death or radiological tumor progression, whichever occurs first. There
3 are different tools assessing tumor response with imaging. The most established tool for
4 measuring tumor response in oncology are the RECIST criteria(26), initially developed to
5 evaluate response to cytotoxic drugs. These criteria were adapted to account for HCC
6 singularities in the modified RECIST (mRECIST) version, which incorporates viable tumour
7 detected with arterial enhancement as a key component to evaluate response(21,27). Using
8 **mRECIST criteria increases the percentage of subjects who achieve objective response**
9 **compared to standard RECIST, as shown in different studies of systemic therapies (28–32).**
10 A recent meta-analysis evaluated the power of PFS to predict OS in phase 3 trials testing
11 systemic therapies in advanced HCC(20). The study found a moderate correlation between
12 PFS and OS in 21 RCTs. The authors proposed a conservative surrogate threshold of ≤ 0.6
13 for hazard ratio of PFS to predict clinically relevant improvements in OS(33). TTP is defined
14 as the time elapsed between patient randomization and radiological tumor progression.
15 Scheduling repeated radiological assessment of response every 6-8 weeks is mandatory
16 for patients included in trials. Data from SHARP and subsequent studies challenges the
17 implied correlation between TTP and OS. The type of progression may also have clinical
18 implications (34). Survival is worse if patients develop a new extrahepatic lesion and/or
19 vascular invasion as opposed to tumor progression resulting from growth of an existing
20 lesion or a new intrahepatic lesion. Lastly, ORR is the percentage of patients with an
21 objective tumor response, and its correlation with OS is worse than for PFS or TTP(20).
22 This is partially inherent to the use of odds ratios instead of hazard ratios for ORR and also
23 to the fact that only a small proportion of patients achieve an objective response (<25%, for
24 approved drugs in advanced HCC), which is the event that correlates with OS(31).
25 Nonetheless, ORR has been reported as an independent predictor of survival in early HCC
26 treated with **radiofrequency ablation**, intermediate treated with TACE and advanced HCC
27 treated with TKI(27). **The impact of the duration of response, which has been reported to be**
28 **around 12 months for checkpoint inhibitors vs. less than 6 months for TKIs, has not yet been**
29 **properly incorporated into response assessment. The same is true to small reductions in**
30 **tumor size not reaching standard thresholds for objective response.** In some cases, duration
31 of disease control may be more clinically relevant than the extent of reduction in tumor size.
32 Also, in the case of immune checkpoint inhibitors, tumor response can have a longer lag-
33 time compared to other molecular therapies and can even mimic progression shortly after
34 treatment initiation (*i.e.*, pseudo-progression(35)). This has led to the development of
35 immune-related response criteria(36), which require confirmation of progression at least 4
36 weeks after progressive disease is first documented.

43 Surrogate endpoints are frequently used by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to
44 approve drugs under the accelerated program, which was initially developed to facilitate
45 early access to new antivirals during the worst years of the HIV epidemic(37). In HCC, the
46 FDA has used ORR and duration of response to grant accelerated approval of the immune
47 checkpoint inhibitors (CPI) nivolumab(38), pembrolizumab(39) **and recently the combination**
48 **of ipilimumab and nivolumab(40).** **Accelerated approval is not universal and includes some**
49 **subjectivity from regulators in regards to the strength of the evidence to support approval**
50 **without a randomized phase 3 study(24,41).** **In addition, while the use of ORR and other**
51 **surrogate endpoints may be used to support regulatory approval, they do not necessarily**
52 **support inclusion in guidelines which often adhere to a higher level of evidence.** Despite
53 their common use, surrogate endpoints are vulnerable to interpretation bias. Besides the
54 strength of the endpoint, it is key to determine when the benefit provided by a new therapy
55 is really clinically meaningful. This can be controversial, depending on factors such as the
56 perceptions of patients, providers, health insurers and regulators. In HCC, there is no set
57 threshold that defines a clinically meaningful benefit, but some authors have suggested a
58 hazard ratio cutoff of OS ≤ 0.8 as a starting point for clinical trial design(42). In fact, all
59
60

1
2 positive trials in HCC have led to significant differences in survival with HR below this
3 threshold.
4

6 **Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: design and endpoints**

7
8 Surveillance for HCC is one of the milestones advancing the management of HCC, despite
9 that there is not unquestionable data directly supporting a decrease in cancer-related death
10 in persons on surveillance(43). Ultrasound (US), with or without alpha-fetoprotein (AFP),
11 performed every six months is the current standard and is recommended for surveillance of
12 patients with cirrhosis of any cause or chronic hepatitis B without cirrhosis above a regional
13 and gender appropriate age cut-off determined by expert liver societies(3,4). Overall, the
14 implementation of those programs to all targeted populations is modest, and current data
15 report detection of HCC in the setting of surveillance in between 30-50% of cases(44). **In**
16 **meta-analysis, the pooled sensitivity and specificity of US alone has been shown to be 53%**
17 **(95% CI: 35-70) and 91% (95% CI:86-94), respectively, while the combination of US and**
18 **AFP has a sensitivity of 63% (95% CI:48-75) and a specificity of 85% (95%CI:77-89)(45).**
19 Due to the relatively low sensitivity and specificity of this approach for detecting early stage
20 HCC, particularly in North America, where high rates of central obesity decrease the
21 performance of ultrasound, a recent study showed that this strategy leads to 27% of patients
22 with cirrhosis experiencing harms such as follow up testing (CT, MRI, liver biopsy)
23 performed for false-positive or indeterminate results(46). Further, due to low implementation
24 of comprehensive strategies for HCC surveillance, more than 60% of HCCs in North
25 America, Europe, Africa and large parts of Asia, excepting Taiwan and Japan, are
26 diagnosed with intermediate or advanced stage HCC(47). There is, therefore, an urgent
27 need for better performing, low cost surveillance strategies in HCC, and accounting for both
28 the benefits and harms of surveillance strategies is important.
29
30
31

32
33 Within this overriding context, there is excitement time because advances in genetic,
34 epigenetic, proteomic, glycoproteomic and metabolomic analyses in have enabled large
35 scale multi-omic analyses of HCC tissues, circulating tumor DNA, plasma and serum,
36 resulting in the accelerated identification of novel biomarkers(48–51). Models using
37 standard biostatistical and machine learning and artificial intelligence (AI) approaches are
38 using biomarkers combined with clinical parameters to identify persons at highest risk for
39 HCC. Models and biomarkers under active exploration include the GALAD (Gender, Age,
40 AFP-L3, AFP, and Des-carboxy-prothrombin) score(52), novel glycoproteins (fucosylated
41 kininogen)(53), liquid biopsy analyses of circulating tumor DNA for differentially methylated
42 regions(54)(55), and imaging with abbreviated MRI(56). Creating the framework for
43 validation of future surveillance is critically important.
44
45

46
47 To guide the development and evaluation of new surveillance strategies for clinical
48 utilization, a 5-phase program has been developed by the NCI- Early Detection Research
49 Network (EDRN) for biomarker that uses human samples (blood or human tissue) as well
50 as imaging tests (57). **Table 3 shows recommended phases of surveillance test validation,**
51 **including trial design for studies for HCC surveillance.** *Phase 1* are biomarker discovery or
52 exploratory studies. *Phase 2* studies estimate the ability of a test to distinguish early stage
53 HCC from those with cirrhosis without HCC. It is important to test for confounders such as
54 age, etiology of liver disease, and liver function; and to have adequate sample size and
55 power. *Phase 3* studies enroll at risk individuals and follow them for clinical diagnosis of
56 HCC using prospective-specimen collection, retrospective-blinded evaluation (PRoBE)
57 design (58). The aim is to evaluate, as a function of time before clinical diagnosis, the
58 capacity of the test to detect preclinical HCC; and also, to define the criteria for a positive
59 surveillance test in preparation for phase 4 and 5 studies. Thus, Phases 1-3 rely on
60 retrospective analysis of stored data and specimens. *Phase 4* studies require the new test

1
2 be applied to patients with cirrhosis in the clinical setting to assess test performance in HCC
3 detection and false positive and negative rates. Depending on the test under study it may
4 be possible to skip *Phase 4* if the test is already used for patient care, for example,
5 evaluating an MRI for surveillance of HCC. *Phase 5* studies are randomized trials comparing
6 the new surveillance tests against the standard of care, in the case of HCC the standard
7 should be US with or without AFP, with the aim of determining whether the test can reduce
8 mortality at the population level.
9

10
11 When performing surveillance studies in patients with cirrhosis it is important to enrich the
12 *at risk* population in order to achieve a sufficient number of incident HCCs in a reasonable
13 time period. Enriching cohorts with patients of older age, viral hepatitis, male sex, Hispanic
14 ethnicity, history of diabetes, and family history of HCC should be considered (59,60).
15 Alternatively, known independent factors associated with HCC development are abnormal
16 bilirubin and platelet count $<100,000/\text{mm}^3$. There is also a need to study currently important
17 populations such as those with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease-related cirrhosis, those with
18 hepatitis C-related cirrhosis who have achieved a sustained virological response after
19 antiviral treatment, and those with suppressed hepatitis B infection on antiviral treatment.
20 These three specific populations will be the most important etiological risk factors in the next
21 decade and their HCC incidence rates (around 1%/year) appear lower than in previous at
22 risk populations(61). Methods for risk stratification within these populations will therefore
23 become increasingly important for improving the effectiveness of surveillance strategies and
24 programs. Models such as the REAL-B and PAGE-B scores, incorporating male sex, age,
25 alcohol use, baseline cirrhosis, diabetes, platelet count and AFP, allow improved risk
26 stratification of patients on oral antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis B and could potentially
27 be incorporated into surveillance programs(62).
28
29
30

31
32 An important potential confounder in studies that compare the performance of novel
33 biomarkers to current surveillance strategies is the incorporation of imaging by ultrasound
34 or other radiologic modalities into the standard of care. This may confound the results if
35 ultrasound is also used as part of the control arm for the study, as ultrasonography is itself
36 typically part of the gold standard process for determining whether a patient has HCC. Thus,
37 patients with HCCs that are not visible by ultrasound may be falsely determined to be
38 negative for cancer and a positive biomarker test erroneously labeled as a false positive. It
39 is therefore important to use a different high-accuracy imaging modality such as multiphasic
40 MRI as a gold standard in studies for which ultrasonography is part of the surveillance
41 strategy. However, use of MRI may add substantial cost to the study and may also result in
42 visualization of a number of small indeterminate false positive lesions that are seen on MRI
43 and require follow up investigation, a component of the harms associated with surveillance.
44 While studies of the performance of ultrasound with or without AFP in the clinical care setting
45 have shown suboptimal performance in detection of HCC in at risk individuals, it is not clear
46 what the performance characteristics are for phase 2, 3 or 4 biomarker studies that would
47 meet the threshold for FDA approval as a surveillance test. In general, the FDA guidelines
48 for supporting biomarker qualification recommend that analyses intended to support
49 biomarker qualification should be specified in an analysis plan with a prospective-
50 retrospective design before analyzing the data. The FDA provides no set quantitative criteria
51 for determining the relationship between the biomarker and clinical outcome, such as
52 diagnosis of HCC, within a particular context of use. Overall, the goals for *in vitro* diagnostic
53 biomarker studies are that they should produce valid scientific evidence demonstrating
54 reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the product, and protect the rights
55 and welfare of study subjects(63,64).
56
57
58

59
60 Key unmet needs in the field of chemoprevention include an improved understanding of the
potential for HCC risk reduction by chemoprevention using commonly used medications

1
2 such as aspirin and other antiplatelet agents, statins, metformin and similar agents(65–68).
3 In order to build a robust evidence base through chemoprevention trials, a number of key
4 hurdles need to be crossed, including better definition of target populations, trial enrichment
5 or stratification prior to randomization using clinical, genetic, or other molecular risk
6 stratifying strategies, and careful delineation of appropriate and clinically meaningful end-
7 points for both biomarker-based and chemoprevention trials. Enrichment of populations
8 included in chemopreventive trials should aim to a reasonable time-to event (occurrence of
9 HCC) endpoint, certainly within the threshold of 5 years. Stratification factors for at risk
10 populations have been outlined below and are mandatory to prevent imbalances. Finally,
11 one of the bottlenecks of these trials is that the accepted adverse events for maximum
12 tolerated doses (grade 3 toxicities are unacceptable) are completely different compared to
13 those accepted for primary treatments of advanced tumors, where grade 3-4 adverse events
14 at the level of 30-50% are common for currently accepted drug treatments.
15
16
17
18

19 **Early HCC stages: design of trials for resection, transplantation and local ablation**

20 Hepatic resection is the treatment of choice for patients with preserved liver function (Child's
21 class A, bilirubin < 1.0 mg/dl, no evidence of portal hypertension) who have a solitary HCC
22 > 2 cm without macrovascular invasion(3,4,69) (**Fig 1, Table 4**). Outcomes of ideal
23 candidates treated following these criteria are significantly better compared with outcomes
24 not following the guidelines (70). Recent guidelines accepted expanding criteria to include
25 patients with HCC within Milan criteria (3). While 5-year survival rates are in the range of
26 70% after resection, recurrence of HCC is also around 70% at 5 years)(71). Early (within 2
27 years) recurrence is most commonly due to the appearance of preexisting undetected
28 metastatic disease, with the most common site in the remaining liver; late recurrence is
29 predominantly the result of *de novo* development of HCC in the remaining liver. There is,
30 thus, a critical unmet need for therapy that can reduce the incidence of HCC recurrence
31 after resection.. A study demonstrating benefit of retinoid administration(72) was not
32 confirmed in a subsequent multicenter trial(73), and small studies suggesting benefit from
33 adoptive immunotherapy(74) and I-131 lipiodol embolization of the liver remnant(75) the
34 results of which have not been duplicated. To this point, all phase III high-quality adjuvant
35 trials conducted so far in this area have been negative, A large randomized, controlled trial
36 of sorafenib after resection or thermal ablation demonstrated no benefit(76). Current
37 attention is largely focused on immunotherapy. Treatment of advanced HCC with anti-PD-
38 1 or PD-L1 antibodies has consistently yielded responses in the range of 15-20%((38,39,41)
39 that are often quite durable. In non-small cell lung cancer similar response rates are seen
40 in advanced disease, and a neoadjuvant trial for resectable tumors resulted in a roughly
41 doubled response rate(77).
42
43
44
45

46 Phase 3 trials are currently underway with single-agent immunotherapy or combination
47 therapies. In advanced disease combination therapy, an anti-PD-1/PD-L1 plus either a
48 tyrosine kinase inhibitor (e.g. sorafenib, lenvatinib), an anti-VEGF antibody (e.g.
49 bevacizumab), or a second checkpoint inhibitor (e.g., anti-CTLA-4 antibody) appears to
50 significantly raise response rates, and if established in the advanced setting combination
51 therapy will no doubt be studied in adjuvant/neoadjuvant trials. **The ultimate hope is that
52 effective adjuvant/neoadjuvant therapy will be able to substantially improve recurrence-free
53 survival. It is the consensus of the panel that entry criteria for adjuvant/neoadjuvant studies
54 in HCC resection should conform to the criteria for resectability currently espoused in
55 AASLD guidelines(4,69), and prevent a broadening of the tumor eligibility for resection (e.g.,
56 multiple tumors, presence of vascular invasion) observed in some currently-running
57 adjuvant trials.** While all patients undergoing resection for HCC have significant risk of
58 recurrence, studies should stratify for known risk factors including tumor size (>3cm),
59 microvascular invasion, **differentiation degree** and serum AFP>400 ng/mL. Neoadjuvant
60

1
2 studies provide a unique opportunity to better understand what factors are associated with
3 response to immunotherapy or lack thereof. Pretreatment biopsy should be mandatory, and
4 thorough characterization of the tumor immune microenvironment should be built into these
5 trials.
6

7 Liver transplantation is the treatment of choice for HCC within Milan criteria in patients who
8 are not candidates for resection (78) (**Fig.1, Table 4**). These criteria lead to median OS of
9 10 years and recurrence rate of < 20%. In the US it has been accepted that patients with
10 more extensive disease (one nodule between 5-8cm, 2-3 nodules \leq 5cm or 4-5 nodules <
11 3cm with sum of diameters < 8cm) down-staged to Milan criteria are acceptable for
12 transplantation (79). Downstaging is not accepted by European guidelines, although
13 performed in some countries such as Italy. A significant number of patients who enter the
14 waiting list or a down-staging protocol drop out and do not ultimately undergo
15 transplantation. Locoregional therapy using thermal ablation or transarterial
16 chemoembolization have been the modalities traditionally applied to maintain HCC within
17 Milan criteria while awaiting transplant or to down-stage patients to eligibility. With the
18 advent of effective systemic therapies, their role in the pretransplant setting vis-à-vis
19 locoregional treatment warrants exploration in clinical trials. Locoregional treatment should
20 be the control arm, compared to systemic therapy either alone or in combination with
21 locoregional, with the primary endpoint of drop-out / transplantability. Stratification should
22 be according to whether patients were initially within or beyond Milan criteria, **or down-**
23 **staged to Milan, and base-line AFP levels >400ng/ml.**
24
25
26

27 Treatment of HCC recurrence following transplantation is largely unstudied. The rate of
28 recurrence in properly selected patients is low (10-20%) and these patients have been
29 routinely excluded from studies of systemic therapies. Tyrosine kinase inhibitors have been
30 shown to be safe and are commonly used in an uncontrolled manner(80). There is
31 considerable reluctance to use immunotherapy with anti-PD-1/L1 antibodies due to reports
32 of treatment-related organ rejection, though there are reports of successful treatment(81).
33 As HCC now accounts for nearly 25% of liver transplants in the US, it is time for trials to be
34 implemented studying treatment of post-transplant HCC recurrence.
35
36

37 Local ablation is the mainstay treatment for nonsurgical candidates with early stage HCC
38 (3,4) (**Fig 1, Table 4**). Tumor size (up to 4-5 cm), number (up to 3 tumors) and location
39 (accessibility with ultrasound, CT or MRI guidance) limit the applicability of percutaneous
40 ablation. Several randomized studies have demonstrated a significant benefit of
41 radiofrequency ablation (RFA) over percutaneous ethanol injection in terms of complete
42 response rate, and time to recurrence(82,83). Consequently, RFA is the standard ablative
43 therapy at early stages (**Table 1**). Median OS with RFA is of 60 months, with a recurrence
44 rate ranging from 50-70% (3,4,82,83). **AASLD and EASL guidelines have adopted**
45 **radiofrequency ablation as front line therapy for single tumors <2cm, but in tumors beyond**
46 **this threshold resection remains as first treatment option(3,4).** Randomized phase III trials
47 are scarce in this arena, and are mostly currently focused on adjuvant therapies to prevent
48 recurrence than in challenging the ablative treatment. **Microwave ablation has largely**
49 **supplanted RFA in the United States(84), whereas ethanol injection is restricted to HCC <**
50 **2cm in difficult locations.** Cryoablation and irreversible electroporation are still under
51 investigation(3,4,85). Clinical benefit associated with the use of thermally-sensitive carriers
52 loaded with liposomal doxorubicin in conjunction with radiofrequency ablation is currently
53 tested in phase III.
54
55
56

57 Overall, the main criteria for trial design in the neo-adjuvant/adjuvant after resection/local
58 ablation or liver transplantation setting are as follows (**Table 1**):
59
60

1
2 1. Target populations for neoadjuvant and adjuvant trials: For resection, trials should include
3 patients meeting current AASLD guidelines, and should not include patients with more
4 advanced HCC, e.g. macrovascular invasion. For transplantation, trials should include
5 patients meeting criteria for listing (i.e., Milan criteria), or meeting established criteria for
6 entry into downstaging protocols. For local ablation the target population should follow
7 AASLD guidelines.
8

9
10 2. Endpoints: The appropriate end-point for adjuvant trials in the setting of either resection
11 or transplant is recurrence-free or time to recurrence. For neo-adjuvant trials, pathological
12 response or 1-yr recurrence can also be considered. For treatments challenging loco-
13 regional therapies, OS remains the primary endpoint, but PFS is also recommended as co-
14 primary end point. Secondary endpoints should at least include objective response rates.
15

16 3. Stratification prior to randomization: Appropriate stratification parameters for
17 neoadjuvant/adjuvant studies in the setting of early-stage HCC should include geographical
18 region, tumor size and number, AFP >400ng/mL, type of curative treatment, and
19 pathological features of high risk (size >3cm, microvascular invasion, **differentiation degree**
20 and tumor satellites).
21

22
23 4. Control arms: For neoadjuvant/adjuvant studies in the setting of resection, a placebo
24 control arm is appropriate. Adjuvant studies in transplantation should also include placebo
25 controls. Defining the control arm for neoadjuvant studies in transplantation remains
26 problematic as there is no evidence-based standard, but there is a general acceptance of
27 the need to include loco-regional therapies to limit tumor progression in patients awaiting
28 transplant that precludes including placebo or untreated patients. Control arms for devices
29 or drugs challenging local ablation should be radiofrequency. Of note, since RFA has been
30 considered effective in nodules up to 4cm, trials exploring treatments for single nodules
31 beyond this size should consider chemoembolization as the best standard control.
32

33
34 5. Unmet needs: HCC recurrence rates after resection or local ablation are unacceptably
35 high. Key needs include biomarkers to improve case selection, and effective
36 neoadjuvant/adjuvant therapies. With regard to transplantation for HCC key needs include
37 definition of optimal neoadjuvant (waiting list) strategies, and identification of useful
38 biomarkers to refine candidate selection beyond algorithms based on tumor size and
39 number.
40

41 **Trial design and endpoints in intermediate stage HCC**

42
43 TACE was established as the standard of care for intermediate stage HCC in 2002 following
44 the publication of two small, randomized controlled trials for which OS was the primary
45 endpoint (**Table 4**). The first trial, conducted in Barcelona, demonstrated a hazard ratio of
46 0.47 [95% CI 0.25–0.91], $p=0.025$ in favor of TACE, and a 2 year survival of 63% compared
47 with 23% for supportive care(86). In the second, TACE was associated with an
48 improvement in 2 year survival from 11% with supportive care to 31% with TACE, and a
49 reduction in relative risk of death; 0.49 (95% CI, 0.29-0.81; $P = 0.006$)(87). Response using
50 WHO criteria, was evaluated as a secondary endpoint and was shown to be associated with
51 a better survival(86). On the basis of these trials and a subsequent meta-analysis(88), the
52 BCLC algorithm recommends TACE for those with intermediate stage disease HCC defined
53 by liver confined, multinodular disease, in those patients with a performance status of 0,
54 Child Pugh A or B cirrhosis and in the absence of portal vein invasion(3,5) (**Fig 1**).
55 Chemoembolization was subsequently adopted by AASLD and EASL guidelines of
56 management of HCC, and no other therapy has so far replaced this standard of care.
57 However, since 2003(86,88) there have been further innovations, guidelines and
58 therapeutic advances which need to be considered in the design of current and future trials.
59 Finally, radioembolization with Y90 for intermediate HCC has produced positive efficacy
60

1
2 signals coming from phase 2 investigations(89), but they have not been adopted by
3 guidelines awaiting phase 3 positive data for this specific population.
4

5 Eligibility criteria and stratification factors.

6
7 It is increasingly recognized that the BCLC B stage is heterogeneous and this likely
8 accounts for the wide spectrum of reported survival outcomes, which range from 12-48
9 months. Consequently, there have been several proposals to subdivide the BCLC group but
10 to date, none have been widely adopted(90,91). Additionally, patients who have a
11 performance status of 1 but otherwise conform to the BCLC criteria, are routinely treated
12 with TACE, and many clinicians regard Child-Pugh B disease as a relative contraindication.
13 Applicability of TACE in BCLC-B is 50%, with the excluded patients having relative
14 contraindications for the procedure due to advanced liver dysfunction or technical
15 issues(92). Recent large RCTs have included patients with PS 0-1, Child-Pugh A, and
16 absence of portal vein thrombosis (**Table 1,2**)(93–96). Stratification factors have been less
17 consistent with the exception of AFP for which a threshold of 400ng/ml has been commonly
18 applied. Composite and fully objective prognostic systems may provide a more feasible and
19 consistent method by which to stratify patients. The ALBI score allocates a grade based on
20 bilirubin and albumin and provides a more objective measure of liver function as compared
21 with Child-Pugh class(97). A direct comparison between ALBI and Child Pugh has shown
22 that the ALBI grade 1 is 92% Child-Pugh A5, ALBI 2 spans a wide range from A5 to B9 and
23 ALBI 3 is B7 and above(98). However, tumor characteristics such as size and AFP are also
24 prognostic and this has been addressed by the HAP score which provides a four class
25 prognostic system using bilirubin, albumin, tumour size and AFP as categorical
26 variables(99). The HAP score has been validated in the TACE-treated population, most
27 recently within a cohort of 3000 patients(100). Applying the HAP score resulted in four
28 distinct groups with survival ranging from 33 months for HAP A to 12 months for HAP D.
29 HAP appears to be a simple and robust stratification factor that might be incorporated into
30 TACE trials
31
32
33
34

35 TACE procedure

36
37 The TACE technique provides another source of heterogeneity and potential bias(101).
38 There remains no consensus regarding the optimal embolic particle, the role of lipiodol or
39 the type of chemotherapy used. Indeed, there are no trials demonstrating the superiority of
40 TACE over bland particle embolization (TAE) and a meta-analysis of five trials including 582
41 patients showed no difference in survival(102). It is unlikely that further technical innovation
42 to the TACE procedure will result in significantly improved outcomes and the future
43 generation of TACE trials will continue to evaluate the combination of TACE and systemic
44 therapy or to compare TACE with systemic therapy. In both cases, TACE will be the control
45 arm and it is important that this is standardized. To achieve this, some of the recent
46 randomized trials have mandated use of drug-eluting beads (DEB TACE)(93,94). Trials
47 comparing DEB TACE with conventional TACE (cTACE) have failed to show a survival
48 benefit but systemic toxicity from chemotherapy is reduced with DEB TACE(103) (104). If
49 technique is not standardized, stratification according to center is an alternative way to
50 reduce bias. Another area of contention is the schedule of TACE administration. In clinical
51 practice, TACE is usually performed on demand according to radiological response rather
52 than according to a fixed interval, and it is reasonable to recapitulate this in clinical trials.
53 However, an effective systemic therapy may reduce the requirement for TACE. In the
54 TACE-2 trial, there were 18% fewer TACE procedures performed in 12 months in the
55 sorafenib arm compared with the placebo arm(93), and in the Oriental trial, the median
56 number of procedures was 3.2 versus 3.7 in the orantinib and placebo arm respectively(96).
57 Recording the number of procedures over the first 12 months or the mean number of
58 procedures should be considered as a secondary endpoint for randomized trials of TACE
59
60

1
2 versus TACE plus systemic therapy. In this sense, the reduction in frequency and number
3 of TACE procedures may have implications for health economics and preservation of liver
4 function.
5

6 Response assessment

7
8 Radiological response is an important indicator of therapeutic activity and can be a
9 surrogate marker of long-term outcomes. Response assessment has been addressed in the
10 next section, but few concepts regarding loco-regional therapies are summarized here. In
11 TACE-related population, mRECIST demonstrated a higher response rate compared with
12 RECIST 1.1(105). Moreover, there was a significant association between survival and
13 overall response according to mRECIST but not with RECIST 1.1. The association between
14 mRECIST response and survival has subsequently been confirmed in multiple other studies
15 and a recent meta-analysis of seven studies including 1357 patients reported a hazard ratio
16 for survival of 0.39 (95% CI; 0.26,0.61) for those with mRECIST response(106).
17 Unfortunately, not all the recently reported phase 3 studies reported response and only
18 TACE-2 ascertained response by both RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST. Best response by
19 RECIST 1.1 was higher than first response but still less than response by mRECIST.
20 Guidelines recommend capturing response as per mRECIST in clinical practice and both
21 RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST as secondary endpoints trials targeting intermediate stage
22 tumors(3).
23
24
25

26 Primary endpoints

27
28 In recent trials, OS for intermediate stage patients receiving TACE was of 21-33 months(93–
29 96) (**Table 2**). Over the past 10 years, there have been major advances in systemic therapy
30 and many patients now transition from TACE to first and increasingly second line systemic
31 therapy. In TACE-2, patients were unblinded on progression and 36% of those on placebo
32 subsequently received sorafenib(93). Similarly, in the BRISK TA trial, 21% of placebo
33 treated patients had post-progression systemic therapy (95) trial, and in the ORIENTAL trial,
34 66% of patients in the placebo arm received post-study therapy (96). Use of post-
35 progression therapy may confound OS as an endpoint and increases the duration of follow-
36 up required to meet the survival endpoint. To address this, a variety of surrogate endpoints
37 have been proposed including progression free survival (PFS), time to progression (TTP),
38 time to disease progression (TTDP), time to extrahepatic spread and vascular invasion
39 (TTES/VI) and time to unTACEable progression (TTUP). Recent trials reporting these
40 potential surrogates in addition to survival has allowed evaluation of their performance. The
41 BRISK TA trial reported a promising hazard ratio of 0.61 for TTP but the trial missed its
42 primary endpoint for survival (HR 0.9)(95). Overall, the correlation coefficient of TTP and
43 OS is 0.77. A major limitation of TTP is that it fails to capture death, which is an important
44 indication of toxicity as well as lack of efficacy. By contrast, PFS, which is the most
45 commonly applied surrogate endpoint used in oncology, captures disease progression and
46 death, and has been reported to correlate with OS in the TACE 2 trial. Novel composite
47 endpoints have also been explored. Time to appearance of extrahepatic spread or vascular
48 invasion (TTES/VI or MVI/EHS) showed a promising HRs of 0.64 and 0.62 in the BRISKT
49 TA and SPACE trial that did not correlate with OS benefit(94,95). Particularly, TTUP (time
50 to untreatable progression), a composite end point defined as failure of response after to
51 treatments, or emerging contraindications for TACE was tested in the SPACE trial, but failed
52 to identified benefits for the combo of TACE plus sorafenib vs TACE (HR: 1.586). Recently,
53 other novel endpoints were incorporated into the TACTICS trial comparing TACE plus
54 sorafenib vs TACE alone(107) (108). In this study, PFS and OS were co-primary end points
55 but progression was defined as unTACEable progression and Response Evaluation Criteria
56 in Cancer of the Liver (RECICL)(109) was used to define progression rather than RECSIT
57 1.1 or mRECIST. Applying these criteria, PFS was superior in the combination arm
58
59
60

(HR=0.59; 95% CI, 0.41 to 0.87; p=0.006) but further follow-up is required to establish whether this translates into a survival benefit. In the meantime, for RCT testing devices alone or in combination with systemic therapies it is recommended that PFS should be the co-primary endpoint along with OS, while ORR should be included as a secondary endpoint (Table 1 & 2). Additional composite endpoints can be included as exploratory endpoints until they are properly validated.

A challenging question for the future is how TACE compares to systemic therapy. TACE was developed at a time when systemic therapy was virtually non-existent. With the advent of first, second and even third line systemic therapies and achieved OS beyond 2 years in selected patients receiving two lines of therapy(23), systemic therapy can be discussed not only following TACE but as an alternative to TACE. This is particularly relevant as transarterial therapies impair liver function and may render many patients no longer eligible for systemic therapy. For patients with limited tumor burden and nodules accessible super-selectively by TACE, locoregional TACE may still be the best approach. In contrast, patients exceeding the up-to-seven criteria may be better suited for clinical trials exploring upfront systemic therapy(110). To answer this question a head-to-head comparison of TACE vs. systemic therapy (or vs. TACE plus systemic therapy) in defined patient subgroups will be needed, making the endpoint discussion even more complex.

Radiologic assessment of response

The RECIST criteria are the standard imaging approach for assessing tumor response in oncology. The original RECIST panel acknowledged that amendments could be needed for tumors with unique complexities and for evaluating non-cytotoxic drugs(111). Both issues are highly relevant for HCC: (a) the association of HCC with an underlying chronic liver disease complicates image assessment, since pathologic and hemodynamic changes in cirrhosis and extrahepatic manifestations of chronic liver disease may mimic tumor progression; (b) nonsurgical treatments for HCC, including loco-regional and systemic therapies, achieve improvements in survival without inducing sizeable tumor shrinkage, frustrating attempts to capture tumor response using standard RECIST metrics(12).

In 2010, modified RECIST (mRECIST) criteria for HCC were proposed(21) addressing confounding factors related to cirrhosis using specific amendments for the assessment of lymph nodes, ascites, portal vein thrombosis, and newly detected hepatic nodules (Table 5). These recommendations were made primarily to prevent “overcalls” of progressive disease. In addition, the absence of substantial tumor shrinkage was addressed by introducing the concept of “viable tumor” in the measurement of intrahepatic HCC lesions, enabling the classification of treatment induced intratumoral necrosis in the absence of significant changes in overall tumor diameter as objective responses (21).

During the past decade, mRECIST for HCC has been used extensively in HCC clinical research and its performance has been reviewed elsewhere(27).The proposed mRECIST refinements for assessment of lymph nodes, ascites, portal vein thrombosis, and newly detected hepatic nodules, were progressively incorporated into radiology charters of HCC clinical trials, even when the criteria were named RECIST or RECIST 1.1(112). This process homogenized radiologic interpretation of these findings, improving consistency and reliability in assessment of tumor progression. Consequently, recent studies reported similar results for standard RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST in assessment of progression-driven endpoints, such as PFS and TTP(7,8). Currently, the main difference between standard RECIST and mRECIST is the approach to measurement of intrahepatic lesions, which primarily affects the ability to capture an objective response (OR). Use of the mRECIST viable tumor concept results in identification of 2-3 times more responders than standard

1
2 RECISt, not only in patients receiving loco-regional treatments but also those receiving
3 systemic therapies(7,32).
4

5 With the advent of immune checkpoint inhibitors, changes to the RECISt model have been
6 proposed(35,36,113–115). Response to immunotherapy can manifest after imaging
7 features that meet current RECISt criteria for progression. Pseudo-progression has been
8 defined as increase in tumor size of existing lesions or the appearance of new lesions,
9 followed by a response(35). Differentiating pseudo-progression from true progression is a
10 challenging but important: while early discontinuation of an effective drug is not desirable,
11 continued long-term treatment with a non-effective drug past true progression might delay
12 the initiation of potentially effective therapies. Pseudo-progression has been described as a
13 marginal event in phase III investigations with anti PDL1/PD1 check point inhibitors in HCC.
14 The incidence of this phenomenon with anti- CTLA-4 and other inhibitors is unknown.
15
16

17 Limited information is available on use of immune-related criteria in HCC. In a phase II study
18 of 104 patients who received pembrolizumab in second line after sorafenib, the use of
19 immune-related RECISt (irRECISt) did not affect response rate or time to response as
20 compared to mRECISt; however median PFS was 7.0 months (95% CI, 4.9-8.0) when
21 assessed by irRECISt vs 3.2 months (95% CI, 2.2-4.1) when assessed by mRECISt(116).
22 In phase IIb study(117) investigating a vaccinia virus-based oncolytic immunotherapy -
23 pexastimogene devacirepvec- in advanced HCC changes to mRECISt were implemented
24 because the treatment induces a flare with swelling and edema(118). These changes
25 included the confirmation of progression at 4 weeks, either by further increase in size or
26 additional signs of progression such as emergence of new lesions(117). Overall, to assess
27 response to checkpoint inhibitors or immunotherapies in HCC, evaluation by CT/MRI at 8-
28 12 weeks after treatment can be recommended, as opposed to the usual interval of 6-8
29 weeks for tyrosine kinase inhibitors. This window was used in phase II studies testing
30 nivolumab (12 weeks)(38) and pembrolizumab (9 weeks)(116), where the phenomenon of
31 pseudo-progression was reported as a marginal event.
32
33
34
35

36 **Design and endpoints for systemic therapies in HCC**

37 Standard of care with systemic therapies in HCC

38
39 Current estimates suggest that around 50% of HCC patients will receive effective systemic
40 therapies during their lifespan(3,119,120). Several trials have tried to show survival benefits
41 of systemic agents in advanced disease (**Table 2,4**), a traditionally challenging setting due
42 to the limited efficacy and high toxicity of conventional systemic chemotherapy(121–124).
43 Randomized studies for anti-estrogen therapies also failed to prove any clinical efficacy
44 (125). In 2008, the landmark SHARP trial assessing the multi-tyrosine kinase inhibitor
45 sorafenib was the first to significantly improve survival with manageable adverse
46 events(11). Afterwards, five treatments have succeeded, while several other drugs failed
47 (126,127),(22),(128)(129)(122)(130)(131)(132)(133)-. In first line, atezolizumab (anti-PD-L1
48 inhibitor) plus bevacizumab (VEGFA inhibitor) have shown to be superior to sorafenib in a
49 recently reported RCT(134). The study was stopped at the first interim analysis by showing
50 a HR of 0.58 for OS (median not reached for combo vs 13.2 mo for sorafenib) and HR of
51 0.59 for PFS (median 6.8 mo for combo vs 4.3 for sorafenib). These results will pose this
52 combination as standard of care first-line therapy for advanced HCC. Second, lenvatinib
53 (multikinase inhibitor: VEGFRs, FGFRs, RET, KIT and PDGFRA) has become an option
54 equal to sorafenib, after the positive result of the non-inferiority REFLECT study (HR of 0.92;
55 95% CI 0.79-1.06) (**Table 2, Fig 2A**). Because this trial excludes patients with main portal
56 vein invasion, tumor involvement >50% of the liver and clear bile duct invasion, the relative
57 benefit of lenvatinib vs sorafenib in these patients remain uncertain.
58
59
60

1
2 In second line, the phase III trial testing regorafenib (VEGFRs, PDGFRs, KIT and Tie2)
3 improved OS compared to placebo from 7.8 to 10.6 months (HR of 0.63) in patients who
4 progressed and were tolerant to sorafenib(8). The sequential treatment sorafenib-
5 regorafenib led to a median OS of 26 months compared to 19 months for sorafenib-placebo
6 (23). **These results need to be taken with caution since they will not apply to all patients**
7 **receiving sorafenib, but only those able to receive the sequential treatment.** The
8 CELESTIAL study, showed median OS of 10.2 months with cabozantinib (VEGFRs, MET
9 and AXL) vs. 8 months with placebo (HR of 0.76)(9); and the REACH-2 study, where
10 ramucirumab (VEGFR2 monoclonal antibody) provided a median OS of 8.5 months in
11 patients with AFP \geq 400 ng/ml vs. 7.3 months with placebo (HR of 0.71)(10,135). AFP is
12 well-known for its independent prognostic capacity in HCC(136). As such, REACH-2 was
13 the first and only positive phase III trial in a biomarker-driven population of patients with
14 HCC (**Fig 2B**). In contrast, 3 phase III trials testing internal radiation with Y-90 for advanced
15 HCC, either as single treatment [SARAH(137) and SIRveNIB(138)] or in combination Y-90
16 with sorafenib(139) did not meet the primary endpoint of improved OS compared to
17 sorafenib (**Fig. 2A**). As a result, Y-90 was discouraged for the management of advanced
18 HCC in the EASL guidelines (**Fig. 1**)(3). Despite appealing ORR of 15% with durable
19 response for nivolumab and 18% for pembrolizumab, phase III trials comparing the former
20 with sorafenib(24) in front-line and the latter with placebo in second-line resulted negative.
21 Particularly, the latter trial showed a HR of 0.78 with upper boundary of 95CI below 1, but
22 the pre-specified p value ($p < 0.0178$) was not hit(41).

23 Trial design in advanced HCC

24
25 Overall survival remains as the primary end-point for advanced HCC research(1,3) (**Table**
26 **4**). It has driven clinical research in HCC for more than 40 years and has been the gold-
27 standard for measuring benefits at all stages of the disease. Nonetheless, the emergence
28 of several effective drugs in advanced HCC has exposed the need for alternative end-points
29 that can capture the benefits of a treatment before they can be diluted by post-progression
30 therapy(3). Progression-free survival (PFS), time to progression (TTP) and objective
31 response rate (ORR) are now emerging as tools to a) identify early strong signals of efficacy
32 that led to accelerated regulatory approval (particularly ORR and PFS)(6,88) and b) test
33 interventions which benefit can be assessed prior additional sequential drugs received
34 beyond progression might mask the actual benefit of the tested drug. In this sense, a recent
35 investigation analyzing 21 reported phase III studies(7–11,121–123,126–
36 131,133,135,137,138,140) in advanced HCC proposed PFS (with a restrictive hazard ratio
37 criteria ≤ 0.6) as a surrogate end-point for survival when testing kinase inhibitors or
38 monoclonal antibodies, and thus as potential primary end-point in advanced HCC trials(3)
39 (**Table 4**). Subsequently, six phase III studies have been released that confirm the
40 hypothesis: two positive studies, one testing atezolizumab plus bevacizumab vs
41 sorafenib(134) and the second sorafenib plus hepatic arterial infusion of Folfox vs
42 sorafenib(141), both show HR for PFS ≤ 0.6 and significant survival benefits, and four
43 negative trials for survival testing nivolumab(24), sorafenib plus pravastatin(142), sorafenib
44 plus doxorubicin(143) and pembrolizumab(41), in which the HR for PFS in all cases was
45 > 0.6 (**Fig 3**). Considering the special circumstances of the 2 negative trials testing anti-PD1
46 inhibitors, we should be cautious when applying this rule for testing immune therapies as
47 single agents or for combinations of immune regimens.

48
49 Trial design in HCC has been evolving, and new challenges emerge as novel therapies
50 become standard of care. Although there might be distinct approaches to trial design in
51 HCC, there has been a consensus on the basic principles that have been recently reported
52 in guidelines and critical appraisals (3,139,144,145). The key points are summarized below
53 (**Table 1**):

1
2 1. *Phase II and Phase III trials:* The panel recommends assessing drugs in the setting
3 of randomized phase II studies before moving to phase III trials. Nonetheless, for some
4 therapies, a large single arm phase II with a strong signal of efficacy might suffice to justify
5 a phase III study. Thresholds for defining signals of efficacy are not clearly established, but
6 for molecular therapies the ORR should likely be above 20-30%(146).
7

8 2. *Selection of the target population:* Clinical trials should consider BCLC staging
9 system, Child-Pugh class and ECOG performance status for selection of the target
10 population. In principle, for advanced HCC almost all RCT include patients with well-
11 preserved liver function (Child-Pugh A) and good performance status (ECOG 0 and 1).
12

13 3. *Control arm:* The control arm of randomized phase II and III studies should be the
14 standard of care established according to guidelines. Although sorafenib and lenvatinib in
15 front-line (7,11) and regorafenib (8), cabozantinib(9) and ramucirumab (in patients with AFP
16 ≥ 400 ng/ml)(10) are accepted as standard of care, this will change when atezolizumab plus
17 bevacizumab are approved by regulatory agencies. At that time, this combination will
18 become the standard of care for comparison in front-line, and subsequent lines of therapy
19 will move downwards. Double-blind trials (as opposed to open label trials) are
20 recommended to prevent selection and allocation biases.
21

22 4. *Stratification for prognostic factors prior to randomization:* Stratification is critical in
23 randomized studies to warrant balanced comparisons. For advanced HCC the
24 recommendation is as follows: region, macrovascular invasion, extrahepatic spread, AFP >
25 400 ng/ml and ECOG 0 vs 1-2. Etiology should also be considered as studies with sorafenib
26 and atezolizumab and bevacizumab suggest an influence of this factor in response.
27

28 5. *End points: Overall survival:* For systemic therapies the primary endpoint should be
29 OS, and PFS is proposed as co-primary endpoint. To date, all regular FDA and EMA drug
30 conventional approvals in advanced HCC were based upon improvements in OS.
31 *Surrogate endpoints:* OS has limitations as a sole endpoint in cancer research: it might
32 require a long follow-up to capture adequate numbers and can be affected by sequential
33 therapies. Thus, surrogate endpoints that are more practical for trial execution are needed.
34 There are no optimal surrogate endpoints able to recapitulate OS in HCC, and thus clinical
35 practice guidelines do not recommend ORR, TTP and PFS as primary endpoints in phase
36 III investigations(144,145). ORR is an independent predictor of OS in three phase II and III
37 trials(7,123,127), but is still considered a suboptimal primary end-point for phase III
38 investigations. Nonetheless, ORR of 16-18% resulted in accelerated FDA approval of
39 nivolumab and pembrolizumab in second line treatment of advanced HCC(38,39). PFS was
40 formerly discarded as a primary end-point of phase III investigations due to the concept of
41 competing risk of survival (competing between death due to tumor progression and due to
42 the natural history of cirrhosis)(12). However, this competing risk drawback has been
43 reduced by the universal selection of Child-Pugh A patients for these investigations, thus
44 reducing the 1-yr risk of death due to decompensation to <5%. **Stringent criteria for
45 accepting PFS as primary endpoint have been proposed (HR \leq 0.6) and it is adopted in the
46 current guidelines (Table 1),** but this point is still controversial. Regarding ORR, use of both
47 RECIST1.1. and mRECIST are proposed for the assessment of response in HCC treated
48 with systemic therapy, whereas changes in serum biomarker levels (*i.e.* AFP levels) are not
49 supported(3).
50

51 6. *Magnitude of benefit:* In HCC, there is no consensus on what absolute survival
52 benefit (or magnitude of benefit in OS according to HR) is clinically relevant. Reported
53 thresholds of OS with HR <0.8 are sound for capturing the benefit of patients in advanced
54 HCC trials(20). **This figure needs to be taken with caution, since other variables can impact**
55

1
2 the overall benefit of a given drug, such as quality of life, safety profile and availability of
3 alternative therapies in distinct countries.
4

5 7. Checkpoint inhibitors and other immunotherapies have unique features and
6 generally produce higher ORR and longer duration of response, as measured by
7 RECIST1.1. The values of mRECIST and irRECIST in assessing checkpoint inhibitor
8 mediated responses remain investigational.
9

10 11 **Immune treatments: Overview of results and specific endpoints**

12
13 The initial clinical experience with checkpoint inhibitors in HCC was with a phase II study
14 testing tremelimumab, a CTLA-4 antibody leading to objective response of 18% of patients
15 and time to tumor progression was 6.5 months (147). Immunotherapy has drawn significant
16 attention in HCC with the approval of nivolumab and pembrolizumab by the FDA based on
17 promising results obtained in different phase II studies(38,39). A phase I/II open-label, non-
18 comparative trial (CheckMate 040) assessing the efficacy of nivolumab in advanced HCC
19 reported objective response rate (ORR) of 20% in the dose-expansion phase (n=214) and
20 15% in the dose-escalation phase (n=48). Duration of response (DOR) was 9.9 months and
21 median PFS as 4.0 months in the dose-expansion cohort. Nivolumab treatment was well
22 tolerated (38). Pembrolizumab, another PD1 specific antibody, was tested in phase II in
23 patients with HCC progressing or intolerant to sorafenib (Keynote 224). Pembrolizumab was
24 effective and tolerable with one complete response (CR) and 17 PR out of 104 patients. The
25 median progression free survival was 4.9 months, and median OS was 12.9 months(39).
26 Camrelizumab, another fully humanized anti-PD-1 antibody, was evaluated in a randomized
27 phase 2 trial in Chinese patients with advanced HCC after failure of at least one line of
28 therapy(148). The ORR was 13.8% and the 6-month OS was 74.7%.
29
30
31

32 Nivolumab and pembrolizumab failed in phase III trials (**Fig. 2A-B**). Pembrolizumab was
33 tested in a randomized, double-blind phase III trial against placebo in 443 patients with HCC
34 that progressed on or were intolerant to sorafenib (Keynote-240). The co-primary endpoints
35 of PFS and OS failed to reach the prespecified level of statistical significance although
36 median OS was prolonged from 10.6 to 13.9 months (HR: 0.781; 95% CI: 0.611-0.998; P =
37 .0238)(149). Nivolumab was tested against sorafenib in a Phase 3 trial (CheckMate 459),
38 but did not reach survival differences for superiority (24). In this RCT including around 750
39 patients, median OS for nivolumab was 16.4mo vs 14.7mo for the sorafenib arm (HR: 0.85;
40 95%CI 0.72-1.02). Objective response rate was 15% and 7%, respectively.
41
42

43 Anti-CTLA4 antibodies have been tested as single agent(147) or in combination with
44 locoregional therapies(150) and are under investigation in combination with anti-PD1
45 drugs(151). **In this regard, very recently the combination ipilimumab and nivolumab received
46 FDA approval based on a ORR of 31% (40).** Currently phase III trials are ongoing which
47 either test the combination of two immune checkpoint inhibitors, immune checkpoint
48 inhibitors plus TACE, immune checkpoint blockade in the adjuvant setting or immune
49 checkpoint inhibitors plus vascular targeting agents(152). While the overall response to
50 immune checkpoint inhibition (15-20%) may not be as dramatic as initially hoped, complete
51 responses are seen in a small number of cases in almost every trial. This observation
52 together with the recent results from two phase III trial testing anti-PD1 antibodies in the
53 first- and second-line setting rise up the important question of what endpoint to use in future
54 trials. While OS remains the “gold standard” it should be noted that HCC is not the only
55 cancer where this question is being asked. Due to the unique mechanism of action of
56 immune checkpoint inhibitors(153), new endpoints such as ORR and surrogate biomarkers
57 have been tested and new immune related RECIST criteria devised to capture distinctive
58
59
60

1
2 patterns and timing of response to immunotherapy(35,115). Finally, while immunological
3 endpoints may be helpful as surrogates(154), they cannot be recommended at this time.
4

5 A systematic review and meta-analysis of 87 phase 2 trials with the foal of defining the most
6 appropriate primary endpoint in phase 2 trials of immune checkpoint inhibitors for advanced
7 solid cancers has been reported. Correlations between ORR odds ratios and hazard ratios
8 (HRs) for PFS and OS were examined for randomized comparisons. Within checkpoint-
9 inhibitor treatment arms, correlations of ORR with 6-month PFS and 12-month OS rates
10 were examined. All analyses were weighted by trial size. Multivariable models to predict 6-
11 month PFS and 12-month OS rates from ORR were developed and their performance
12 validated in an independent sample of trials. The authors demonstrated that ORR correlated
13 poorly with OS and recommended 6-month PFS rate as an endpoint for future phase 2
14 studies,(155). Thus, PFS endpoint can also be recommended for studies evaluating
15 immune checkpoint inhibitors in HCC (**Table 1**).
16
17
18

19 **Biomarker-Driven Trials in HCC: Results and Endpoints**

20
21 Recent clinical trials in advanced HCC are demonstrating that the sequential use of systemic
22 agents is changing the natural history of the disease. Still, these results are incremental
23 and the incorporation of biomarker driven strategies have generally been unsuccessful.
24 Unlike other solid tumors such as breast, lung, colon cancer, and others, where therapeutic
25 decisions are driven by an understanding of a patient given molecular features, in HCC a
26 “one-size-fits-all approach” is still the usual approach to patients. **This applies to all therapies
27 so far accepted in guidelines, except for ramucirumab.**
28

29 **Biomarkers provide the distinct possibility of supplementing existing anatomic and/or
30 pathologic information to provide a more accurate assessment of prognosis (to be used for
31 patient stratification) and/or to identify individuals who are more likely to respond to specific
32 therapy (predictive of response) (156–158) There is a plethora of literature on the different
33 predictive biomarker validation designs (159). The NCI defines a biomarker as a *biological
34 molecule found in blood, other body fluids, or tissues that is a sign of a normal or abnormal
35 process, or of a condition or disease. A biomarker may be used to determine how well the
36 body responds to a treatment for a disease or condition (160).*
37
38**

39 In HCC, numerous studies have defined the molecular heterogeneity of the disease and
40 specific genetic alterations and subtypes. **These data are fertile ground for testing biomarker
41 hypotheses as both prognostic and/ or predictive markers in prospective studies but so far
42 these data have largely been ignored in clinical development in HCC (6).** To date, two
43 phase 3 studies have tested biomarker driven approaches. Firstly, tivantinib, a small
44 molecule inhibitor of the hepatocyte growth factor/ c-MET was evaluated in patients that had
45 progressed on sorafenib and had elevated expression of c-MET in their tissue. This was a
46 placebo-controlled study that yielded negative results(131). The possible reasons for failure
47 highlight the challenges with this approach including: 1) validity of the target, 2) robustness
48 of the assay for patient selection, and 3) ability of the agent to inhibit the target successfully
49 in tumor tissue. The latter may be a plausible reason for failure of the trial, considering that
50 the anti-MET activity of this drug has been challenged in experimental studies(161).
51 Conversely, ramucirumab, which initially failed in an “all comers” study(162), demonstrated
52 an improvement in OS for selected patients with AFP \geq 400 ng/ ml. Proof-of-concept studies
53 testing small molecule inhibitors of FGFR-4 using biomarker enriched populations based
54 on FGF-19 expression have been reported with ORR of 16% (163).
55
56
57

58 Recently, immunotherapy approaches have garnered high interest in the management of
59 HCC and the PD-1 directed antibodies nivolumab and pembrolizumab received accelerated
60 approval by the US FDA(38,39). However, unlike in other cancers, PD-1 and / or PD-L1

1
2 expression has not correlated with outcome. This has likely contributed to the recent
3 negative results from phase 3 studies with these agents(149). Ongoing work is focused on
4 further refining biomarker development evaluating other inflammatory markers including
5 incorporation of more broad based assessment tools such as an immune-enriched
6 signature identified through molecular profiling of HCC (164).
7

8
9 Several studies have incorporated biomarker assessments into the trial design. While tissue
10 collection is often optional and therefore limited, serum assays have served to generate
11 hypotheses for further study. In the pivotal SHARP study, baseline levels of angiopoietin 2
12 and VEGF were prognostic but not predictive of benefit from sorafenib(136). Relevant
13 biomarkers in the FGF and VEGF pathways were analyzed in the REFLECT study and
14 identified differences in the modulation of these pathways by lenvatinib and sorafenib, but
15 no biomarker could define a group receiving differential benefit from either compound(165).
16 In the REACH-2 study, decreases in AFP correlated with better outcome from
17 ramucirumab(10). Novel study designs evaluating biomarker assessments pre-and post-
18 treatment are being performed. These so-called “pre-surgical” studies are designed to
19 acquire tissue at baseline, from patients with resectable tumors, expose the patient to a
20 novel agent for a short period, and then collect tissue at the time of resection. Molecular
21 studies comparing the pre-and post-treatment tissue provide an opportunity to understand
22 the effects of novel therapeutics on relevant pathways in the tumor. These studies can
23 provide critical information that could guide a patient selection strategy in conventional
24 efficacy studies. One such study with nivolumab is producing interesting insights into tumor
25 characteristics that may correlate to response to this drug(166).
26
27

28
29 Despite the recent successes in clinical trials of new agents for HCC, the improvements in
30 survival are modest. Throughout cancer medicine, the largest impacts in outcomes have
31 been by biomarker driven drug development. Examples include ALK(167) and EGFR(168)
32 testing in lung cancer, HER-2(169) and estrogen receptor(170) testing in breast cancer, c-
33 KIT testing in gastrointestinal tumors(171), and BCR-ABL testing in chronic myelogenous
34 leukemia(172). By enriching for the population most likely to benefit, studies can be
35 conducted with smaller numbers of patients and minimize risk for failure. While historically
36 predictive marker testing is done on tumor tissue obtained by biopsy, newer technologies
37 are now allowing biomarker detection in peripheral blood. **The practice of not obtaining**
38 **biopsies for diagnosis of HCC, the fact that most common driver mutations in HCC are non-**
39 **actionable and the observation that only 25% of HCCs harbor at least one actionable**
40 **mutation(172), in contrast to the majority of solid tumors(173), have hindered development**
41 **of biomarker driven precision treatment to date. Nonetheless, there is now renewed interest**
42 **in incorporating tissue acquisition into clinical trials, not only in the early part of drug**
43 **development, but in later studies as well. Clinical trial designs for predictive marker**
44 **validation are inherently complex and require data from a randomized controlled clinical trial**
45 **(RCT)(153). There is a plethora of literature on the different predictive biomarker validation**
46 **designs, including articles that specifically focus on the statistical and clinical properties and**
47 **assumptions of these different trial designs (156).**
48
49

50
51 **Trial design in the precision medicine era require a platform for biomarker profiling**
52 **(173)(174). The ultimate clinical utility of a biomarker will depend on: 1) its added value in**
53 **every patient in the context of the markers prevalence, 2) its incremental benefit for**
54 **treatment selection when considering the added costs and complexity induced by the use**
55 **of the marker, and 3) the added effectiveness of the new treatment option in all patients**
56 **versus biomarker-defined subgroups.**
57
58
59
60

Liquid biopsy in early HCC detection, prediction of response and tumor relapse

Liquid biopsy entails the analysis of tumor components released by cancer cells to biological fluids such as blood, saliva or cerebrospinal fluid(175). The concept includes the analysis of actual cancer cells (i.e., circulating tumor cells [CTCs]), fragments of DNA from necrotic or apoptotic cancer cells (i.e., circulating tumor DNA [ctDNA]) and extracellular vesicles(176). Compared to conventional tissue biopsies, the main advantages of liquid biopsy using samples from peripheral blood are: 1) it is minimally invasive, which eliminates the complications associated with invasive tissue biopsies; 2) it facilitates sequential sampling, which is crucial to better select therapies in patients receiving multiple lines of treatment; 3) it enables tracking tumor clonal composition in heterogeneous tumors, a feature that allows earlier detection mechanisms of treatment resistance; and 4) it can be implemented as a point-of-care diagnostic. Potential clinical applications include cancer surveillance, early detection of minimal residual disease after curative therapies, prognostic prediction and molecular monitoring of therapeutic response(177). In an early sign of impact on patient care, the FDA recently approved the use of a ctDNA-based test to detect mutations of EGFR in lung cancer patients who are candidates to receive EGFR-based tyrosine kinase inhibitors(178).

In HCC, liquid biopsy has been evaluated for three clinical applications: early HCC detection in the context of surveillance, as a prognostic biomarker after surgical resection and to predict response to systemic therapies. Mutation profiling of ctDNA is feasible and confidently detects tissue mutations in early stage HCC(179). A recent report combining data from ctDNA and protein markers had a sensitivity and specificity of 85% and 93% respectively for the detection of HCC(180). Also, analysis of DNA methylation alterations in ctDNA has high accuracy for HCC diagnosis(55,181). A study that included a gene signature derived from CTCs was able to accurately discriminate between HCC patients and controls(182). Higher CTC count correlates with a greater risk of tumor recurrence after surgical resection(175). There are few studies using liquid biopsy to predict response to systemic therapies in HCC. A retrospective study suggested that HCC patients with ctDNA detectable *VEGFA* DNA amplifications have better outcomes when treated with sorafenib(183). Also, RAS mutations analysis of ctDNA was used to determine eligibility to receive refametinib in a phase 2 clinical trial(184). Thus, there is increasing interest in applying this technology to predict response to systemic therapies.

Quality of life and patient reported outcomes

Systematic capture of the patient perspective can inform the development of new cancer therapies. The U.S. FDA Office of Hematology and Oncology Products (OHOP) has identified symptomatic adverse events (AEs) as a central Patient Reported Outcome (PRO) using the National Cancer Institute's Patient-Reported Outcomes version of the Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events (PRO-CTCAE) to provide a standard yet flexible method to assess symptomatic AEs from the patient perspective(194,195). The FDA's patient focused drug development program has ongoing efforts to improve methods around the collection, analysis and interpretation of PRO data, as well as initiatives to identify patient-friendly language, and leveraging digital health tools. In 2016, the 21st Century Cures Act tasked the FDA to consider the patient-experience in the risk-benefit determination. The FDA draft guidance outlines the use of PRO to assess symptomatic side effects and the core set of clinical outcomes to measure in cancer trials, including design considerations and assessment frequency(11).

The purpose of measuring quality of life (QOL) should be to compare outcomes between treatment arms, even if one is a placebo. There are two methods of measuring QOL specific to HCC: the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Quality of Live

1
2 Questionnaire (EORTC QLQ)(185) and the Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy-
3 Hepatobiliary (FACT-Hep)(186) questionnaire. Few studies have adequately assessed
4 PRO using these tools in HCC research, a recommendation that is endorsed by the panel.
5

6 Most phase III trials for HCC were designed primarily to compare two different treatments
7 in patients with similar stage disease. For example, one study compared QOL after
8 resection with QOL following radiofrequency ablation(187). As expected, QOL was much
9 better after radiofrequency ablation than after resection, and remained superior up to 36
10 months post-treatment. In addition, QOL following radioembolization has been compared
11 with TACE(188). In this study, there was no overall difference in QOL between the two
12 groups, but the sample size was small. Despite the lack of statistically significant
13 differences, in the TACE group QOL was decreased at 2 and 4 weeks, whereas in the
14 radioembolization group some aspects of QOL actually improved. Similarly, QOL measures
15 favoring Y-90 vs sorafenib have been claimed to support the former treatment in three
16 negative RCT, the SARAH trial (134) and the SIRveNIB trial (135) and SORAMIC trials.
17 However, since indication of a drug/device should be based upon the primary endpoint
18 (survival), no actual indication can be claimed if the result is negative for the primary end-
19 point. Finally, the SHARP trial demonstrating survival benefit of sorafenib also tested time-
20 to-symptomatic progression — as measured by the Functional Assessment of Cancer
21 Therapy–Hepatobiliary Symptom Index 8 (FHSI8) — as a co-primary endpoint. The
22 negative results of this end-point contrasted with the survival benefit obtained by sorafenib,
23 thus challenging the accuracy of the tool used(11). More recently, patient reported
24 outcomes have been tested in the setting of phase III investigations showing significant
25 results in positive RCT in advanced HCC. This is the case of lenvatinib compared to
26 sorafenib, or atezolizumab plus bevacizumab compared to sorafenib, where the tested arms
27 showed better QoL parameters compared with the standard of care. The panel encourage
28 the integration of these endpoints in all investigations in HCC (**Table 6**).
29
30
31
32
33

34 **Implications of trial design in Asia**

35 Differences between AASLD, EASL, and Asian guidelines

36 Recommendations in western guidelines (AASLD and EASL) are based upon evidence from
37 clinical trials (**Table 4**), while Asian guidelines integrate evidence with expert consensus
38 and clinical practice. Applicability of those guidelines varies according to region and
39 treatment stage (47). Asian guidelines (189) in general recommend ablation or resection for
40 very early-stage (stage 0) disease, but differ from western guidelines in the
41 recommendations at other stages of disease. For instance, TACE or yttrium-90 (Y90-SIRT)
42 are recommended for single large tumors, and systemic therapies -i.e Folfox(105), or
43 hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy - are recommended for advanced stages, along with
44 liver transplantation – mostly living donor transplantation . Similarly, in Asia patients with
45 portal vein invasion and well-preserved liver function might be considered for TACE,
46 resection or radiotherapy (190–194).
47
48
49

50 Specificities of trial design in Asia

51 Considering all these guidelines, trial design in Asia has some specificities. For instance,
52 resection in very high-risk patients (multinodular tumors, macrovascular invasion) is
53 common in Asia, and thus adjuvant trials might consider this indication with a recurrence-
54 free survival endpoint. Similarly, studies exploring the role of systemic therapies plus TACE
55 in patients with advanced stages might also be considered in Asia with a primary end point
56 of PFS. Weather these approaches should be tested in specific trials or as part of global
57 trials needs further consideration.
58
59
60

Future prospects

The dawn of a new era: combination therapies

When the report of the first AASLD conference on Design and Endpoints of Clinical Trials in HCC was published(12), the field was still heady with excitement from the first positive trial of a systemic agent for advanced HCC, which established sorafenib as the first FDA approved systemic therapy for HCC (11). However, enthusiasm was also tempered by the subsequent negative results of trials of sorafenib as adjuvant therapy after resection or ablation (STORM)(76) or in combination with TACE (SPACE)(94). It was recognized then that a unique challenge is posed by the combination of underlying chronic liver disease with a very heterogeneous and variably aggressive primary HCC. It is therefore important that treatment strategies account for both the liver disease and malignancy, and thus variables capturing both diseases should be considered in the publication of clinical trials for HCC (**Table 7**). Discussions at the previous AASLD Endpoints conference set the framework for subsequent attempts to bring additional agents to approval, which were met with uniformly disappointing results over the next several years, with trial failures due to unacceptable toxicity or inadequate efficacy(12). While disappointing, these failures led to robust examination of the optimal approach to trial design and catalyzed a more rigorous approach that contributed to the successes in phase 3 HCC clinical trials. With the positive results and approvals of lenvatinib, regorafenib, cabozantinib and ramucirumab based on phase 3 studies, and of the checkpoint inhibitors nivolumab and pembrolizumab based on convincing phase 2 data, we appear to be poised for success in the next most logical treatment paradigms using combination therapies. Indeed, the recent positive phase III study demonstrating superior OS for atezolizumab plus bevacizumab vs sorafenib(134), represents the dawn of a new era of combination therapies in all stages of HCC research (**Fig 1**). This combination is certainly *first in-class* of this approach. Whether other combinations may become *best-in-class* will depend upon the ability of specific TKI and/or MAb to transform “cold tumors”, which are primary resistant to immunotherapy, into “hot-immune-active tumors”, allowing checkpoint inhibitors to optimally unleash immune attack against cancer cells(195–197) .

The advent of combination therapies achieving response rates of 30% and survival rates above 20 months in advanced HCC provides the rationale for testing these combinations in earlier HCC stages. Currently, phase III trials testing combination therapies are ongoing for early stages (neo-adjuvant or adjuvant approaches), intermediate HCC (in combination with TACE or in comparison to TACE) and in front-line trials for advanced HCC (**Table 7**). It is conceivable that systemic therapies may be incorporated in all areas of HCC management in the near future. Thus, the up-dated target population and endpoints described here should be valuable in this endeavor.

Understanding tumor biology remains critical: tissue and blood samples are needed

It is likely that the next key advances in HCC therapy will emanate from an improved understanding of HCC biology and the ability to predict the response of specific HCCs subgroups to particular therapies. Until now, most HCC therapy has been applied in a biologically indiscriminate fashion. The biological heterogeneity of HCC has been evident for many years, demonstrated by differences in phenotypes, tumor growth rates, numbers of tumor nodules, discrete versus infiltrative appearance, propensity for microvascular or macrovascular invasion, propensity for distant metastasis, and association with elevation of AFP, AFP-L3, DCP and other biomarkers. Apart from the limitations that multifocal, invasive or metastatic disease have placed on application of potentially curative treatments such as surgical resection, liver transplantation, and local ablation, we have only recently begun to incorporate markers of tumor biology into therapeutic decision making. Applications of tumor

1
2 biologic characteristics into therapeutic approaches have been scarce in HCC and mostly
3 focused on using AFP levels for selection policy for transplantation, as an stratification factor
4 in most of trials and finally for selecting candidates to ramucirumab in the management of
5 advanced HCCs in second line.
6

7 With the advent of next generation DNA, RNA and non-coding RNA sequencing and similar
8 genome wide methodologies for copy number variation, methylation and proteomic
9 characterization, we now stand ready to translate information from these technologies to
10 the care of HCC patients, transforming the selection of systemic therapy and the selection
11 of optimal candidates for loco-regional therapies. Results suggesting that *CTNNB1*-mutated
12 HCCs are immune excluded and potentially resistant to immune checkpoint inhibitors(198–
13 200) but potentially susceptible to mTOR inhibitors are an early indication of the potential
14 value of genomics in personalizing HCC therapy. These studies may also provide us with
15 tools for better understanding the recent borderline negative results of phase 3 trials with
16 single agent immune checkpoint inhibitors. Personalization of therapy using molecular and
17 genomic signatures will require integration of molecular subclasses into clinical staging
18 systems, to better guide treatment selection. Optimal treatment selection will depend on the
19 ability to target oncogenic signaling pathways that drive tumorigenesis, tumor progression
20 and metastasis. The development of new preclinical tumor models, including organoids,
21 patient derived xenografts, and syngeneic models that preserve aspects of the immune
22 response will be critical for the testing of novel agents and combinations. Ideally, integration
23 of molecular profiling into the HCC treatment paradigm will require genomic data derived in
24 real time from patients, either by tissue biopsy or through liquid biopsy-based access to
25 circulating tumor DNA or other analytes. This will require a cultural change in the care of
26 HCC patients, shifting from a state in which the diagnosis and evaluation of patients is
27 performed non-invasively, to regular use of tissue biopsy and highly sensitive liquid biopsy
28 assays. Development of robust, reproducible predictive biomarkers of high reliability is a
29 key priority to facilitate this transition (**Table 6**). The first implementations of the biomarker-
30 based approaches should be within RCT, which should now routinely require tissue biopsy
31 and liquid biopsy collection as a condition of trial enrollment. Tumor biopsy at screening for
32 trial entry and liquid biopsy at different time points should be mandatory in clinical trials for
33 advanced HCC to allow identification of prognostic and predictive biomarkers, guide clinical
34 decision-making and improve patient outcomes.
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

42 ***Novel endpoints might be adopted***

43 The revolution in drug development in HCC has created the need to revisit established
44 conventions in trial design. OS is regarded as a core endpoint. Nonetheless, the realization
45 that more than 60% of patients progressing after TACE and 50% of patients progressing
46 after first-line systemic therapies receive effective next line therapies may compel the
47 adoption of PFS as an acceptable primary endpoint for major trials (**Table 1**). In this position
48 paper, we already are recommending PFS as co-primary endpoint for intermediate HCC
49 trials, and for phase II-III trials assessing systemic therapies, with restrictive cut-points.
50 Similarly, patient reported outcomes (PRO) should be pursued as a relevant endpoint in
51 HCC trials, particularly as we enter an era of potent, but seemingly toxic, dual or triple
52 combination therapies possibly associated with serious adverse events. It is important to
53 recognize that currently many HCC patients reach a point in their therapeutic journey when
54 they elect to forgo potentially life extending therapy in favor of approaches that optimize
55 their quality of life. It is therefore critical to extend decisions about HCC trial design and
56 endpoints to incorporate elements that reflect the importance of patient well-being.
57
58
59
60

FIGURE LEGENDS

Figure 1. Modified BCLC staging system considering new effective therapies in advanced stages [modified and up-dated from EASL Guidelines(3)] Management of patients with HCC is guided by the Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer (BCLC) staging system, which takes into account both tumor extent and the severity of the underlying liver disease, and defines five prognostic subgroups with respective treatments. Treatment for early stage tumors is with curative intent and options include radiofrequency ablation, hepatic resection, and liver transplantation. Patients with intermediate or advanced HCC are candidates for chemoembolization or systemic therapies, respectively. *Patients with end-stage liver disease if Child-Pugh class C should first be considered for liver transplantation. **Patients with preserved hepatic function Child-Pugh class A with normal bilirubin and no portal hypertension are optimal candidates for hepatic resection. ‡The combination of atezolizumab plus bevacizumab is not yet approved but is set to become the new first-line treatment for advanced HCC(134)- DDLT, deceased donor liver transplantation; ECOG, Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; LDLT, living donor liver transplantation; M1, distant metastasis; N1, lymph node metastasis; OS, overall survival.

Figure 2. Overall survival outcomes (HR, 95% CI) of phase III clinical trials testing molecular targeted therapies, checkpoint inhibitors and radioembolization in patients with advanced-stage hepatocellular carcinoma. Blue=positive trials for superiority. Orange=positive trials for non-inferiority. Black=negative trials for the primary end-point, Red=tested drug was significantly worse than the standard of care. Vertical red line at HR=1.08 defines the upper boundary of 95% confidence interval accepted by FDA for a positive non-inferior study.

Figure 3. Correlation between progression-free survival and overall survival in 27 phase III trials of advanced HCC (modified from Llovet, J Hep 2019(20)) . Trial-level correlation between endpoints using criteria from the Institute for Quality and Efficiency in Health Care (IQWiG). R and R2 refers to the weighted Pearson coefficient between the HR of OS and the HR of the surrogate endpoint. Each dot represents one of the phase III clinical trials conducted on advanced HCC. Size of the dot is proportional to the total number of patients enrolled in the trial. First 21 phase III trials defined a cut-off of 0.6 for PFS to correlate with a significant OS (colored in grey)(20). Afterwards, six additional phase III trials have been reported afterwards: two positive for survival show a HR for PFS <0.6 (green color) and four negative for OS show a PFS HR > 0.6 (red color). X- and Y-axis depict the value of the HR for the surrogate and the hard endpoint, respectively. Gray shaded areas represent the upper and lower limits of the 95% confidence intervals for the regression. HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma; HR, hazard ratio; OS, overall survival.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

TABLES

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

Table 1. Recommendations for Trial design and endpoints in patients with HCC by AASLD panel of experts.

Aim	Factor	Considerations and recommendations
Select the target population	BCLC stage	Include patients according to specific BCLC stage (0–C)
	Child-Pugh classification	Include patients in Child–Pugh class A. Consider ALBI grade and MELD score for refinements on Child A class
	Biomarker-based enrichment	Define rationale for using biomarker and tool
Selection of endpoints	Overall survival (OS)	Primary endpoint for phase II and III studies assessing treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC.
	Progression-free survival (PFS)	Primary endpoint for Phase II studies assessing primary treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC. Consider co-primary in phase III studies in intermediate and advanced HCC, with strict rules for calling superiority Independent centralized blinded review*
	Time to Progression (TTP)	Secondary (or co-primary) endpoint for Phase II studies assessing primary treatments in intermediate and advanced HCC. Independent centralized blinded review*

29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

	Recurrence-free survival (RFS)	Primary endpoint in phase II/III studies assessing adjuvant treatments
	Time to recurrence (TTR)	Primary endpoint (2 nd choice) in phase II/III studies assessing adjuvant treatments
	Objective response rate	Phase II co-primary endpoint, Phase III secondary end-point Surrogate endpoint for accelerated approval Independent blinded review assessing mRECIST for interventions at early/intermediate HCC. Both RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST for interventions at advanced stages
	Patient reported outcomes (PRO)	Recommended as secondary endpoint in all phase III investigations, particularly when testing loco-regional or systemic therapies
	Composite endpoints	OS plus PFS might be considered
Select control arm	Surveillance	Ultrasound with or without AFP
	Adjuvant therapy after resection or local ablation for early stage HCC	Placebo
	Early stage-non surgical	Radiofrequency ablation. Special consideration for single large (>4cm tumoral diameter) when standard of care is TACE as per the stage migration principle.
	Intermediate stage disease	Chemoembolization**
	First line treatment for advanced stage disease	Atezolizumab plus bevacizumab will be considered when

		approved. Sorafenib or lenvatinib plus supportive care Other treatments in Asia**
	Second-line treatment for advanced stage disease	Regorafenib (only in patients tolerant to sorafenib) or cabozantinib. Ramucirumab only in patients with AFP > 400 ng/ml
	Third-line treatment for advanced stage disease	Placebo
To stratify factors before randomization	Adjuvant	A) Geographical region B) Tumor size and number C) Type of curative treatment D) Pathological factors of high risk (size >3cm, microvascular invasion, poor differentiation degree and tumor satellites)
	Intermediate-stage	Child-Pugh class, AFP >400 ng/ml and geographical region. ALBI score might be considered. Selection of large tumoral burden as per above 7-up-to-7 has been proposed (adopting criteria for extended indications in liver transplantation), but requires validation
	First-line advanced stage	ECOG status, MVI-EHS, AFP >400 ng/ml and geographical region, Etiology (HCV vs others when testing sorafenib)
	Second-line advanced stage	ECOG status, MVI, EHS, geographical region, AFP >400 ng/ml. Type of progression might be considered

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

AFP, α -fetoprotein; BCLC, Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer; ECOG, Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group; HCC; hepatocellular carcinoma; EHS=extrahepatic spread; MVI=macrovascular invasion; RECIST, Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumours.

*= not always recommended

**= Asian guidelines recommend additional treatments for

Intermediate HCC: Japan: HAIC; China: Resection; Taiwan: Resection/Y90

Advanced HCC: Japan : HAIC/Resection/TACE; China: FOLFOX4, resection/TACE; Korea: TACE

Table 2. Expected outcomes reported in phase III trials in HCC research.

Expected outcomes	Early	Intermediate	Advanced (1 st line) ***	Advanced (2 nd line)
Overall survival		TACE: 21 mo(93), 26mo (95)-33 mo(96)	Sorafenib: ~11-14(7,11,24) mo Lenvatinib: ~13 mo(7) Atezolizumab+bevacizumab *** (134)	Regorafenib: ~11 mo(8) Cabozantinib: ~10 mo(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~8 mo(10)
PFS	RFS*adjuvant resection /ablation: 33mo	TACE: 7mo (93,95)	Sorafenib: ~4(7) months Lenvatinib: ~7 months(7)	Regorafenib: ~3 mo(8) Cabozantinib: ~5 mo(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~3 mo(10)
ORR*		TACE: ~45-54% (93)	Sorafenib: ~10%(7) Lenvatinib: ~24%(7) Atezolizumab+bevacizumab : 33%; RECIST: 27%(134)	Regorafenib: ~10%(8) Cabozantinib: ~4%(9) Ramucirumab (only AFP> 400 ng/ml): ~5%(10)

*RFS: Recurrence free survival

** ORR as per mRECIST

***Atezolizumab+bevacizumab is expected to be first line, while sorafenib and lenvatinib will be second line therapies, see **Fig 1**

Table 3. Phases of Surveillance Test Validation in Hepatocellular Carcinoma [(adopted from Pepe et al(57))].

Phases	Type of Study	Design	Aims	Comments
1	Preclinical exploratory	Case-control from biobanked samples	Promising HCC biomarkers identified	Avoid multiple freeze-thaw for blood and tissue samples
2	Clinical Assay and Validation	Large case-controlled accounting for confounders	Biomarker detects clinically established early stage HCC	Appropriate sample size and power essential
3	Retrospective longitudinal	PRoBE	Biomarker detects pre-clinical HCC	Assess benefits and harms of surveillance
4	Prospective screening	Prospective cirrhosis cohort	Confirms the ability of the novel biomarker to detect early stage disease	Assess benefits and harms
5	Cancer control	Randomized study of new biomarker compared to US and AFP	Impact of screening on reducing mortality in patients with cirrhosis (or high-risk populations)	Survival primary endpoint; secondary endpoint early stage detection, assess harms

Table 4. Guidelines recommendations for treatment according to levels of evidence* and strength of recommendation.** *Treatments accepted in guidelines (EASL(3) and AASLD(4)) and level of evidence (modified from Llovet et al(119))*

Category	Treatment	Eligibility criteria or alternative approaches	Evidence level	Recommendation strength
Surgical treatment	Resection	Patient with solitary tumors and well-preserved liver function	2A	Strong
	Liver transplantation	Patients with single tumors of ≤ 5 cm or ≤ 3 nodules of ≥ 3 cm (Milan criteria) not suitable for resection. Down staging to Milan *.	2A	Strong; Moderate: down staging (US), not recommended in Europe
Loco-regional treatment	Local-ablation	Radiofrequency, BCLC 0-A not suitable for surgery, upper limit 4-5cm Radiofrequency ablation (and alternatively percutaneous ethanol) injection for patients with BCLC 0-A tumours that are not suitable for surgery.	2A 2B	Strong
	Chemoembolization	BCLC B (multinodular asymptomatic tumours without vascular invasion or extra-hepatic spread)	1A	Strong
Systemic treatment	Atezolizumab+ bevacizumab	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies	1A	Strong (not yet included in guidelines)
	Sorafenib	Child-Pugh A	1A	Strong

		Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies		
	Lenvatinib	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC tumours (BCLC C) or BCLC B progressing upon loco-regional therapies. No Main portal vein invasion	1A	Strong
	Regorafenib	Child-Pugh A Tolerant to sorafenib. Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib	1A	Strong
	Ramucirumab	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib AFP > 400 ng/dL	1A	Strong
	Cabozantinib	Child-Pugh A Advanced HCC progressing on sorafenib	1A	Strong
Palliative care	Palliative support	Patients with BCLC D tumours should receive management of pain, nutrition and psychological support	2B	
<i>Treatments under investigation or with further evidence required to be adopted in guidelines</i>				
Surgical treatment	Resection	Patients with multifocal small tumors (≤ 3 nodules ≤ 3 cm) or mild portal hypertension)	3A	Moderate
		Adjuvant treatments after resection/local ablation	1D	Strongly not recommended

	Liver transplantation	Up-to-seven criteria in patients without microvascular invasion	2B	Moderate
		Neo-adjuvant loco-regional therapies if the waiting list exceeds 6 months	2D	Moderate
		Living donor liver transplantation in patients with a waiting list exceeding 6-7 months	2A	Moderate
Loco-regional treatment	Other ablative therapies, such as cryoablation, laser, irreversible electroporation or high-intensity focused ultrasound	Patients with BCLC 0-A tumours that are not suitable for surgery	N/A	Not recommended
	Chemoembolization	Use of drug-eluting beads, which has shown similar response rates as gelfoam-lipiodol particles associated with less systemic adverse events	1D	Moderate
	Chemoembolization combined with systemic TKIs	Multiple RCT failed to show improved outcomes	1A	Not recommended
	Y90-Radioembolization-	In patients at stage BCLC B and in patients BCLC A with a single nodule larger than 4 cm as an alternative to resection	1D	No recommendation
	External conformal radiotherapy (SBRT)	3D Single tumors at early stages (BCLC A)	3A	No recommendation

Systemic treatment	Molecular targeted therapies and immune-based therapies	- Patients BCLC A as neo-adjuvant therapies. - Patients BCLC B in combination with TACE, Child Pugh A class, ECOG 0-1	1A	No recommendation
Palliative care	Radiotherapy to alleviate pain	Patients with bone metastasis	3A	Moderate

AASLD, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases; BCLC, Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer Group; EASL, European Association for the Study of the Liver; HCC, hepatocellular carcinoma.

*National Cancer Institute classification: **Strength of evidence:** Level #1 (RCT or meta-analysis); #2 non-randomized controlled studies; #3 case series; **Strength of end-point:** A: survival B: cancer-specific survival; C Quality of life, and D: others.**

Table modified from EASL-EORTC guidelines(5)

Table 5. Basic concepts and key points for standard RECIST 1.1 and mRECIST assessment in HCC⁽²⁷⁾

Evaluation		RECIST 1.1	mRECIST
Baseline Assessment	Target lesions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identify up to 2 intrahepatic tumor lesions ≥ 1 cm, that appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest viable tumor diameter. • Identify extrahepatic tumor lesions that are ≥ 1 cm in longest diameter and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest overall tumor diameter. • When selecting lymph nodes as extrahepatic target lesions, the short axis must be measured and it must be ≥ 1.5 cm. • Overall, include a maximum of 2 target lesions per organ and 5 target lesions in total. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Identify up to 2 intrahepatic tumor lesions ≥ 1 cm, that show typical intratumoral arterial enhancement and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest viable tumor diameter. • Identify extrahepatic tumor lesions (and intrahepatic lesions with atypical enhancement in patients without typical intrahepatic lesions) that are ≥ 1 cm in longest diameter and appear suitable for accurate and repeat assessments; measure their longest overall tumor diameter. • When selecting lymph nodes as extrahepatic target lesions, the short axis must be measured: it must be ≥ 1.5 cm for all lymph nodes except for porta hepatis lymph nodes where it is required that it is ≥ 2 cm. • Overall, include a maximum of 2 target lesions per organ and 5 target lesions in total.
	Non-target lesions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tumor lesions or sites of disease that have not been selected as target lesions should be recorded at baseline as non-target lesions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tumor lesions or sites of disease that have not been selected as target lesions should be recorded at baseline as non-target lesions. • Malignant portal vein thrombosis should be considered as a non-target lesions. • Ascites and pleural effusions should not be considered as tumor lesions, unless associated with unequivocal neoplastic peritoneal or pleural nodules.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Measure the longest overall tumor diameter for intrahepatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Measure the longest viable tumor diameter of typical intrahepatic

<p>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23</p> <p>Post-Baseline Assessments</p>	<p>Target lesions</p>	<p>and non-nodal extrahepatic target lesions, and the short axis diameter for nodal target lesions.</p>	<p>target lesions avoiding the inclusion of any major intervening areas of necrosis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pay attention in distinguishing areas of tumor necrosis from areas of reduced arterial perfusion caused by changes in local hemodynamics. A change from hypervascularity to hypovascularity does not represent tumor necrosis. Only tumors or tumor areas that show complete absence of contrast enhancement can be assumed to represent necrotic tissue. • Measure the longest overall tumor diameter for atypical intrahepatic target lesions and non-nodal extrahepatic target lesions, and the short axis diameter for nodal target lesions
	<p>Non-target lesions</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Qualitative assessment of response. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Qualitative assessment of response, taking into account tumor necrosis for typical intrahepatic non-target lesions. • Complete disappearance of enhancement inside malignant portal vein thrombus should be considered equivalent to complete regression
	<p>New lesions</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any new lesion that has no corresponding lesion on baseline imaging and is unequivocally malignant is considered as evidence of PD. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • By definition, a new lesion has no corresponding lesion on the baseline imaging. • A new liver lesion ≥ 1 cm that shows nonrim-like hypervascularization in the arterial phase with nonperipheral washout in the portal venous or the delayed phase meets the criteria for unequivocal new lesion and declares PD. • Any new liver lesion <1 cm or any new liver lesion of any size that fails to show the enhancement pattern described above should be considered as equivocal and can only be diagnosed as HCC by evidence of either a change in enhancement pattern (when ≥ 1 cm) or an interval growth ≥ 1 cm in subsequent scans. • If an equivocal new lesion is later determined to be unequivocal, the timepoint of progression will be the

			<p>timepoint that the lesion was first noted as equivocal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ascites or pleural effusion that appear during treatment should not be assumed to represent PD, unless associated with the emergence of unequivocal neoplastic peritoneal or pleural nodules.
--	--	--	--

Overall assessment of tumor response by RECIST 1.1 or mRECIST

Target lesions	Non-target lesions	New lesions	Overall response
CR	CR	No	CR
CR	Non-CR-NonPD	No	PR
PR	Non-PD	No	PR
SD	Non-PD	No	SD
PD	Any	Yes or no	PD
Any	PD	Yes or no	PD
Any	Any	Yes	PD

CR, complete response; PR, partial response; SD, stable disease; PD, progressive disease.

Table 6. Unmet needs in trial design in HCC.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

1. Clinical trials:

- Evidence-based data from RCT to provide standard of care in
 - a) Adjuvant setting after resection/local ablation
 - b) Neo-adjuvant setting prior resection/liver transplantation
 - c) Define role of loco-regional therapies or SBRT in large single non-surgical tumors
- Evidence-based data from RCT to improve the standard of care in
 - a) Combination or systemic therapies to improve chemoembolization in intermediate HCC
 - b) Combination (or triple) therapies for 1st line advanced HCC
 - c) Molecular and immune-based therapies for patients with HCC and impaired liver function (Child-Pugh B).
- Pivotal proof-of-concept phase II trials and trial enrichment for oncogenic drivers or signaling pathways
- Systematic inclusion of cost-benefit analyses

2. Identification and validation of biomarkers:

- Develop biomarkers for early detection in surveillance programs
- Identify biomarkers predicting treatment response and primary resistance (tissue or liquid biopsy)

3. Quality of life & patient reported outcomes:

- Incorporate tools for measuring quality of life into clinical trial design as an endpoint
- Systematic inclusion of patient reported outcomes

4. Molecular pathogenesis and drug development:

- Integrate molecular subclasses to the clinical staging system in order to better guide treatment allocation
 - Target oncogene addiction loops that result from DNA amplifications and gene mutations or overexpression
 - Improve models for pre-clinical testing of novel drugs
-

Table 7. Variables to be included in clinical trials assessing treatments for HCC patients

Demographic	Age, sex, ethnicity Underlying liver disease (cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis) Etiology : define based upon HCV, HBV, alcohol, NASH-NAFLD and others.
Tumor description	Radiological characteristics: size, number of nodules, macroscopic vascular invasion, extrahepatic spread Alpha-fetoprotein Pathological characteristics in adjuvant trials: size, number, differentiation degree, satellites, micro and macroscopic vascular invasion, pTNM
Staging system	BCLC staging classification
Liver function	Bilirubin, aminotransferases, albumin, alkaline phosphatase, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, serum creatinine, serum sodium, prothrombin time, INR, platelet count Presence of ascites or encephalopathy Child – Pugh score ALBI and MELD score
General health	ECOG status, pain, constitutional syndrome

* Modified from Llovet et al, JNCI 2008(12) HCV = hepatitis C virus; HBV = hepatitis B virus; pTNM = pathological tumor–node–metastasis;

BCLC = Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer; BUN = serum urea nitrogen; MELD: Model of End-Stage Liver Disease; ECOG = Eastern Cooperative

Oncology Group.

REFERENCES

1. Bray F, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.3322/caac.21492>
2. Villanueva A. Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2019;380:1450–1462.
3. Galle PR, Forner A, Llovet JM, Mazzaferro V, Piscaglia F, Raoul J-L, et al. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2018, 56(4):908–43
4. Marrero JA, Kulik LM, Sirlin CB, Zhu AX, Finn RS, Abecassis MM, et al. Diagnosis, Staging, and Management of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: 2018 Practice Guidance by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. *Hepatology.* 2018;68:723–750.
5. Llovet JM, Ducreux M, Lencioni R, Di Bisceglie AM, Galle PR, Dufour JF, et al. EASL-EORTC clinical practice guidelines: management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2012;56:908–943.
6. Llovet JM, Montal R, Sia D, Finn RS. Molecular therapies and precision medicine for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41571-018-0073-4>
7. Kudo M, Finn RS, Qin S, Han K-H, Ikeda K, Piscaglia F, et al. Lenvatinib versus sorafenib in first-line treatment of patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised phase 3 non-inferiority trial. *Lancet.* 2018;391:1163–1173.
8. Bruix J, Qin S, Merle P, Granito A, Huang Y-H, Bodoky G, et al. Regorafenib for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma who progressed on sorafenib treatment (RESORCE): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet.* 2017;389:56–66.
9. Abou-Alfa GK, Meyer T, Cheng A-L, El-Khoueiry AB, Rimassa L, Ryoo B-Y, et al. Cabozantinib in Patients with Advanced and Progressing Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018;379:54–63.
10. Zhu AX, Kang Y-K, Yen C-J, Finn RS, Galle PR, Llovet JM, et al. Ramucirumab after sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma and increased α -fetoprotein concentrations (REACH-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30937-9](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30937-9)
11. Llovet JM, Ricci S, Mazzaferro V, Hilgard P, Gane E, Blanc J-F, et al. Sorafenib in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2008;359:378–390.
12. Llovet JM, Di Bisceglie AM, Bruix J, Kramer BS, Lencioni R, Zhu AX, et al. Design and endpoints of clinical trials in hepatocellular carcinoma. *JNCI Journal of the National Cancer Institute.* 2008;100:698–711.
13. Lee DH, Vilemeyer O. Analysis of overall level of evidence behind Infectious Diseases Society of America practice guidelines. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 2011;171:18–22.

14. Jadad AR, Moore RA, Carroll D, Jenkinson C, Reynolds DJ, Gavaghan DJ, et al. Assessing the quality of reports of randomized clinical trials: is blinding necessary? *Control. Clin. Trials.* 1996;17:1–12.
15. Verhagen AP, de Vet HC, de Bie RA, Kessels AG, Boers M, Bouter LM, et al. The Delphi list: a criteria list for quality assessment of randomized clinical trials for conducting systematic reviews developed by Delphi consensus. *J. Clin. Epidemiol.* 1998;51:1235–1241.
16. Altman DG, Schulz KF, Moher D, Egger M, Davidoff F, Elbourne D, et al. The revised CONSORT statement for reporting randomized trials: explanation and elaboration. *Ann. Intern. Med.* 2001;134:663–694.
17. Piaggio G, Elbourne DR, Altman DG, Pocock SJ, Evans SJW, CONSORT Group. Reporting of noninferiority and equivalence randomized trials: an extension of the CONSORT statement. *JAMA.* 2006;295:1152–1160.
18. van Tulder M, Furlan A, Bombardier C, Bouter L, Editorial Board of the Cochrane Collaboration Back Review Group. Updated method guidelines for systematic reviews in the cochrane collaboration back review group. *Spine.* 2003;28:1290–1299.
19. Lopez PM, Villanueva A, Llovet JM. Systematic review: evidence-based management of hepatocellular carcinoma - an updated analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther.* 2006;23:1535–1547.
20. Llovet JM, Montal R, Villanueva A. Randomized trials and endpoints in advanced HCC: Role of PFS as a surrogate of survival. *J. Hepatol.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2019.01.028>
21. Lencioni R, Llovet JM. Modified RECIST (mRECIST) assessment for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Semin. Liver Dis.* 2010;30:52–60.
22. Cheng AL, Kang YK, Lin DY, Park JW, Kudo M, Qin S, et al. Sunitinib versus sorafenib in advanced hepatocellular cancer: results of a randomized phase III trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:4067–4075.
23. Finn RS, Merle P, Granito A, Huang Y-H, Bodoky G, Pracht M, et al. Outcomes of sequential treatment with sorafenib followed by regorafenib for HCC: additional analyses from the phase 3 RESORCE trial. *J. Hepatol.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2018.04.010>
24. Checkmate 459 results [Internet]. Available from: <https://news.bms.com/press-release/bmy/bristol-myers-squibb-announces-results-checkmate-459-study-evaluating-opdivo-nivol>
25. Prasad V, Kim C, Burotto M, Vandross A. The Strength of Association Between Surrogate End Points and Survival in Oncology: A Systematic Review of Trial-Level Meta-analyses. *JAMA Intern. Med.* 2015;175:1389–1398.
26. Eisenhauer EA, Therasse P, Bogaerts J, Schwartz LH, Sargent D, Ford R, et al. New response evaluation criteria in solid tumours: revised RECIST guideline (version 1.1). *European journal of cancer (Oxford, England : 1990).* 2009;45:228–247.
27. Llovet JM, Lencioni R. mRECIST for HCC: Performance and novel refinements. *J.*

- 1
2 Hepatol. 2020;72:288–306.
3
- 4 28. Edeline J, Boucher E, Rolland Y, Vauléon E, Pracht M, Perrin C, et al. Comparison of
5 tumor response by Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumors (RECIST) and
6 modified RECIST in patients treated with sorafenib for hepatocellular carcinoma.
7 Cancer. 2012;118:147–156.
8
- 9 29. Ronot M, Bouattour M, Wassermann J, Bruno O, Dreyer C, Larroque B, et al.
10 Alternative Response Criteria (Choi, European Association for the Study of the Liver,
11 and Modified Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumors [RECIST]) Versus
12 RECIST 1.1 in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma Treated With
13 Sorafenib. *Oncologist*. 2014;19:394–402.
14
- 15 30. Takada J, Hidaka H, Nakazawa T, Kondo M, Numata K, Tanaka K, et al. Modified
16 response evaluation criteria in solid tumors is superior to response evaluation criteria
17 in solid tumors for assessment of responses to sorafenib in patients with advanced
18 hepatocellular carcinoma. *BMC Res. Notes*. 2015;8:609.
19
- 20 31. Lencioni R, Montal R, Torres F, Park J-W, Decaens T, Raoul J-L, et al. Objective
21 response by mRECIST as a predictor and potential surrogate end-point of overall
22 survival in advanced HCC. *J. Hepatol*. 2017;66:1166–1172.
23
- 24 32. Meyer T, Palmer DH, Cheng A-L, Hocke J, Loembé A-B, Yen C-J. mRECIST to
25 predict survival in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: Analysis of two randomised
26 phase II trials comparing nintedanib vs sorafenib. *Liver Int*. 2017;37:1047–1055.
27
- 28 33. Burzykowski T, Buyse M. Surrogate threshold effect: an alternative measure for meta-
29 analytic surrogate endpoint validation. *Pharm. Stat*. 2006;5:173–186.
30
- 31 34. Reig M, Rimola J, Torres F, Darnell A, Rodriguez-Lope C, Forner A, et al.
32 Postprogression survival of patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma:
33 Rationale for second-line trial design. *HEPATOLOGY*, Vol. 00, No. X, 2013 REIG ET
34 AL. 2013;58:2023–2031.
35
- 36 35. Wolchok JD, Hoos A, O'Day S, Weber JS, Hamid O, Lebbé C, et al. Guidelines for
37 the evaluation of immune therapy activity in solid tumors: immune-related response
38 criteria. *Clin. Cancer Res*. 2009;15:7412–7420.
39
- 40 36. Seymour L, Bogaerts J, Perrone A, Ford R, Schwartz LH, Mandrekar S, et al.
41 iRECIST: guidelines for response criteria for use in trials testing immunotherapeutics.
42 *Lancet Oncol*. 2017;18:e143–e152.
43
- 44 37. Gyawali B, Kesselheim AS. Reinforcing the social compromise of accelerated
45 approval. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol*. [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
46 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41571-018-0066-3>
47
- 48 38. El-Khoueiry AB, Sangro B, Yau T, Crocenzi TS, Kudo M, Hsu C, et al. Nivolumab in
49 patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (CheckMate 040): an open-label,
50 non-comparative, phase 1/2 dose escalation and expansion trial. *Lancet* [Internet].
51 2017; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(17\)31046-2](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)31046-2)
52
- 53 39. Zhu AX, Finn RS, Edeline J, Cattan S, Ogasawara S, Palmer D, et al. Pembrolizumab
54 in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma previously treated with sorafenib
55 (KEYNOTE-224): a non-randomised, open-label phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol*.
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 [Internet]. 2018;Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30351-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30351-6)
3
- 4 40. Center for Drug Evaluation, Research. FDA grants accelerated approval to nivolumab
5 and ipilimumab combinatio [Internet]. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. 2020 [cited
6 2020 Mar 26];Available from: [http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
7 [approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
8 [combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma](http://www.fda.gov/drugs/resources-information-approved-drugs/fda-grants-accelerated-approval-nivolumab-and-ipilimumab-combination-hepatocellular-carcinoma)
9
- 10 41. Finn RS, Ryoo B-Y, Merle P, Kudo M, Bouattour M, Lim HY, et al. Pembrolizumab As
11 Second-Line Therapy in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma in
12 KEYNOTE-240: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Phase III Trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
13 2019;JCO1901307.
14
- 15 42. Ellis LM, Bernstein DS, Voest EE, Berlin JD, Sargent D, Cortazar P, et al. American
16 Society of Clinical Oncology perspective: Raising the bar for clinical trials by defining
17 clinically meaningful outcomes. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2014;32:1277–1280.
18
- 19 43. Nault J-C, Cheng A-L, Sangro B, Llovet JM. Milestones in the pathogenesis and
20 management of primary liver cancer. *J. Hepatol.* 2020;72:209–214.
21
- 22 44. Singal AG, Lampertico P, Nahon P. Epidemiology and surveillance for hepatocellular
23 carcinoma: New trends. *J. Hepatol.* 2020;72:250–261.
24
- 25 45. Tzartzeva K, Obi J, Rich NE, Parikh ND, Marrero JA, Yopp A, et al. Surveillance
26 Imaging and Alpha Fetoprotein for Early Detection of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in
27 Patients With Cirrhosis: A Meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology.* 2018;154:1706–1718.e1.
28
- 29 46. Atiq O, Tiro J, Yopp AC, Muffler A, Marrero JA, Parikh ND, et al. An assessment of
30 benefits and harms of hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in patients with cirrhosis.
31 *Hepatology.* 2017;65:1196–1205.
32
- 33 47. Park J-W, Chen M, Colombo M, Roberts LR, Schwartz M, Chen P-J, et al. Global
34 patterns of hepatocellular carcinoma management from diagnosis to death: the
35 BRIDGE Study. *Liver Int.* 2015;35:2155–2166.
36
- 37 48. Totoki Y, Tatsuno K, Covington KR, Ueda H, Creighton CJ, Kato M, et al. Trans-
38 ancestry mutational landscape of hepatocellular carcinoma genomes. *Nat. Genet.*
39 2014;46:1267–1273.
40
- 41 49. Schulze K, Imbeaud S, Letouzé E, Alexandrov LB, Calderaro J, Rebouissou S, et al.
42 Exome sequencing of hepatocellular carcinomas identifies new mutational signatures
43 and potential therapeutic targets. *Nat. Genet.* 2015;47:505–511.
44
- 45 50. Ally A, Balasundaram M, Carlsen R, Chuah E, Clarke A, Dhalla N, et al.
46 Comprehensive and Integrative Genomic Characterization of Hepatocellular
47 Carcinoma. *Cell.* 2017;169:1327–1341.e23.
48
- 49 51. Gao Q, Zhu H, Dong L, Shi W, Chen R, Song Z, et al. Integrated Proteogenomic
50 Characterization of HBV-Related Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cell.* 2019;179:561–
51 577.e22.
52
- 53 52. Johnson PJ, Pirrie SJ, Cox TF, Berhane S, Teng M, Palmer D, et al. The detection of
54 hepatocellular carcinoma using a prospectively developed and validated model based
55 on serological biomarkers. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* 2014;23:144–153.
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 53. Wang M, Sanda M, Comunale MA, Herrera H, Swindell C, Kono Y, et al. Changes in
3 the Glycosylation of Kininogen and the Development of a Kininogen-Based Algorithm
4 for the Early Detection of HCC. *Cancer Epidemiol. Biomarkers Prev.* 2017;26:795–
5 803.
6
- 7
8 54. von Felden J, Craig AJ, Villanueva A. Role of circulating tumor DNA to help decision-
9 making in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncoscience.* 2018;5:209–211.
10
- 11 55. Kisiel JB, Dukek BA, Kanipakam RVSR, Ghaz HM, Yab TC, Berger CK, et al.
12 Hepatocellular Carcinoma Detection by Plasma Methylated DNA: Discovery, Phase I
13 Pilot, and Phase II Clinical Validation. *Hepatology* [Internet]. 2018;Available from:
14 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/hep.30244>
15
- 16 56. Khatri G, Pedrosa I, Ananthakrishnan L, de Leon AD, Fetzer DT, Leyendecker J, et
17 al. Abbreviated-protocol screening MRI vs. complete-protocol diagnostic MRI for
18 detection of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: An equivalence study
19 using LI-RADS v2018. *J. Magn. Reson. Imaging* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
20 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/jmri.26835>
21
22
- 23 57. Pepe MS, Etzioni R, Feng Z, Potter JD, Thompson ML, Thornquist M, et al. Phases of
24 biomarker development for early detection of cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.*
25 2001;93:1054–1061.
26
- 27 58. Pepe MS, Feng Z, Janes H, Bossuyt PM, Potter JD. Pivotal evaluation of the
28 accuracy of a biomarker used for classification or prediction: standards for study
29 design. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 2008;100:1432–1438.
30
31
- 32 59. Ioannou GN, Green P, Lowy E, Mun EJ, Berry K. Differences in hepatocellular
33 carcinoma risk, predictors and trends over time according to etiology of cirrhosis.
34 *PLoS One.* 2018;13:e0204412.
35
- 36 60. Kanwal F, Kramer JR, Mapakshi S, Natarajan Y, Chayanupatkul M, Richardson PA,
37 et al. Risk of Hepatocellular Cancer in Patients With Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver
38 Disease. *Gastroenterology.* 2018;155:1828–1837.e2.
39
40
- 41 61. Kanwal F, Singal AG. Surveillance for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Current Best
42 Practice and Future Direction. *Gastroenterology* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
43 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2019.02.049>
44
- 45 62. Yang H-I, Yeh M-L, Wong GL, Peng C-Y, Chen C-H, Trinh HN, et al. REAL-B (Real-
46 world Effectiveness from the Asia Pacific Rim Liver Consortium for HBV) Risk Score
47 for the Prediction of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Chronic Hepatitis B Patients Treated
48 with Oral Antiviral Therapy. *J. Infect. Dis.* [Internet]. 2019;Available from:
49 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1093/infdis/jiz477>
50
51
- 52 63. Office of the Commissioner. Biomarkers at FDA [Internet]. U.S. Food and Drug
53 Administration. 2019 [cited 2019 Nov 15];Available from: [http://www.fda.gov/science-](http://www.fda.gov/science-research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda)
54 [research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda](http://www.fda.gov/science-research/about-science-research-fda/biomarkers-fda)
55
- 56 64. Goodsaid FM. The Labyrinth of Product Development and Regulatory Approvals in
57 Liquid Biopsy Diagnostics. *Clin. Transl. Sci.* 2019;12:431–439.
58
59
- 60 65. Simon TG, Ma Y, Ludvigsson JF, Chong DQ, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS, et al.
Association Between Aspirin Use and Risk of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *JAMA*

- 1
2 Oncol. 2018;4:1683–1690.
3
- 4 66. Malehmir M, Pfister D, Gallage S, Szydlowska M, Inverso D, Kotsiliti E, et al. Platelet
5 GPIIb/IIIa is a mediator and potential interventional target for NASH and subsequent liver
6 cancer. *Nat. Med.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-](http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-019-0379-5)
7 [019-0379-5](http://dx.doi.org/10.1038/s41591-019-0379-5)
8
- 9 67. Simon TG, Duberg A-S, Aleman S, Hagstrom H, Nguyen LH, Khalili H, et al.
10 Lipophilic Statins and Risk for Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Death in Patients With
11 Chronic Viral Hepatitis: Results From a Nationwide Swedish Population. *Ann. Intern.*
12 *Med.* 2019;171:318–327.
13
- 14 68. Tseng C-H. Metformin and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with type 2
15 diabetes. *Liver Int.* 2018;38:2018–2027.
16
- 17 69. Heimbach JK, Kulik LM, Finn RS, Sirlin CB, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, et al. AASLD
18 guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology.* 2018;67:358–
19 380.
20
- 21 70. Roayaie S, Jibara G, Tabrizian P, Park J-W, Yang J, Yan L, et al. The role of hepatic
22 resection in the treatment of hepatocellular cancer. *Hepatology.* 2015;62:440–451.
23
- 24 71. Roayaie S, Obeidat K, Sposito C, Mariani L, Bhoori S, Pellegrinelli A, et al. Resection
25 of hepatocellular cancer ≤ 2 cm: results from two Western centers. *Hepatology.*
26 2013;57:1426–1435.
27
- 28 72. Muto Y, Moriwaki H, Ninomiya M, Adachi S, Saito A, Takasaki KT, et al. Prevention of
29 second primary tumors by an acyclic retinoid, polypropionic acid, in patients with
30 hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatoma Prevention Study Group. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
31 1996;334:1561–1567.
32
- 33 73. Okita K, Izumi N, Matsui O, Tanaka K, Kaneko S, Moriwaki H, et al. Peretinoin after
34 curative therapy of hepatitis C-related hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomized
35 double-blind placebo-controlled study. *J. Gastroenterol.* 2015;50:191–202.
36
- 37 74. Takayama T, Sekine T, Makuuchi M, Yamasaki S, Kosuge T, Yamamoto J, et al.
38 Adoptive immunotherapy to lower postsurgical recurrence rates of hepatocellular
39 carcinoma: a randomised trial. *Lancet.* 2000;356:802–807.
40
- 41 75. Lau WY, Lai ECH, Leung TWT, Yu SCH. Adjuvant intra-arterial iodine-131-labeled
42 lipiodol for resectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective randomized trial-
43 update on 5-year and 10-year survival. *Ann. Surg.* 2008;247:43–48.
44
- 45 76. Bruix J, Takayama T, Mazzaferro V, Chau GY, Yang J, Kudo M, et al. Adjuvant
46 sorafenib for hepatocellular carcinoma after resection or ablation (STORM): a phase
47 3, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol.* 2015;16:1344–
48 1354.
49
- 50 77. Bott MJ, Yang SC, Park BJ, Adusumilli PS, Rusch VW, Isbell JM, et al. Initial results
51 of pulmonary resection after neoadjuvant nivolumab in patients with resectable non-
52 small cell lung cancer. *J. Thorac. Cardiovasc. Surg.* 2019;158:269–276.
53
- 54 78. Mazzaferro V, Regalia E, Doci R, Andreola S, Pulvirenti A, Bozzetti F, et al. Liver
55 transplantation for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 cirrhosis. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 1996;334:693–699.
3
- 4 79. Yao FY, Mehta N, Flemming J, Dodge J, Hameed B, Fix O, et al. Downstaging of
5 hepatocellular cancer before liver transplant: long-term outcome compared to tumors
6 within Milan criteria. *Hepatology.* 2015;61:1968–1977.
7
- 8 80. Sposito C, Mariani L, Germini A, Flores Reyes M, Bongini M, Grossi G, et al.
9 Comparative efficacy of sorafenib versus best supportive care in recurrent
10 hepatocellular carcinoma after liver transplantation: a case-control study. *J. Hepatol.*
11 2013;59:59–66.
12
- 13 81. Morales RE, Shoushtari AN, Walsh MM, Grewal P, Lipson EJ, Carvajal RD. Safety
14 and efficacy of ipilimumab to treat advanced melanoma in the setting of liver
15 transplantation. *J Immunother Cancer.* 2015;3:22.
16
- 17 82. Breen DJ, Lencioni R. Image-guided ablation of primary liver and renal tumours. *Nat.*
18 *Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;12:175–186.
19
- 20 83. Cho YK, Kim JK, Kim MY, Rhim H, Han JK. Systematic review of randomized trials
21 for hepatocellular carcinoma treated with percutaneous ablation therapies.
22 *Hepatology.* 2009;49:453–459.
23
- 24 84. Glassberg MB, Ghosh S, Clymer JW, Qadeer RA, Ferko NC, Sadeghirad B, et al.
25 Microwave ablation compared with radiofrequency ablation for treatment of
26 hepatocellular carcinoma and liver metastases: a systematic review and meta-
27 analysis. *Onco. Targets. Ther.* 2019;12:6407–6438.
28
- 29 85. Nault J-C, Sutter O, Nahon P, Ganne-Carrié N, Séror O. Percutaneous treatment of
30 hepatocellular carcinoma: State of the art and innovations. *J. Hepatol.* 2018;68:783–
31 797.
32
- 33 86. Llovet JM, Real MI, Montaña X, Planas R, Coll S, Aponte J, et al. Arterial
34 embolisation or chemoembolisation versus symptomatic treatment in patients with
35 unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet.*
36 2002;359:1734–1739.
37
- 38 87. Lo C-M, Ngan H, Tso W-K, Liu C-L, Lam C-M, Poon RT-P, et al. Randomized
39 controlled trial of transarterial lipiodol chemoembolization for unresectable
40 hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology.* 2002;35:1164–1171.
41
- 42 88. Llovet JM, Bruix J. Systematic review of randomized trials for unresectable
43 hepatocellular carcinoma: Chemoembolization improves survival. *Hepatology.*
44 2003;37:429–442.
45
- 46 89. Salem R, Mazzaferro V, Sangro B. Yttrium 90 radioembolization for the treatment of
47 hepatocellular carcinoma: biological lessons, current challenges, and clinical
48 perspectives. *Hepatology.* 2013;58:2188–2197.
49
- 50 90. Bolondi L, Burroughs A, Dufour J-F, Galle PR, Mazzaferro V, Piscaglia F, et al.
51 Heterogeneity of patients with intermediate (BCLC B) Hepatocellular Carcinoma:
52 proposal for a subclassification to facilitate treatment decisions. *Semin. Liver Dis.*
53 2012;32:348–359.
54
- 55 91. Kudo M, Arizumi T, Ueshima K, Sakurai T, Kitano M, Nishida N. Subclassification of
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 BCLC B Stage Hepatocellular Carcinoma and Treatment Strategies: Proposal of
3 Modified Bolondi's Subclassification (Kinki Criteria). *Dig. Dis.* 2015;33:751–758.
4
- 5 92. Forner A, Gilabert M, Bruix J, Raoul JL. Treatment of intermediate-stage
6 hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nat. Rev. Clin. Oncol.* 2014;11:525–535.
7
- 8 93. Meyer T, Fox R, Ma YT, Ross PJ, James MW, Sturgess R, et al. Sorafenib in
9 combination with transarterial chemoembolisation in patients with unresectable
10 hepatocellular carcinoma (TACE 2): a randomised placebo-controlled, double-blind,
11 phase 3 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2017;2:565–575.
12
13
- 14 94. Lencioni R, Llovet JM, Han G, Tak WY, Yang J, Guglielmi A, et al. Sorafenib or
15 placebo plus TACE with doxorubicin-eluting beads for intermediate stage HCC: The
16 SPACE trial. *J. Hepatol.* 2016;64:1090–1098.
17
- 18 95. Kudo M, Han G, Finn RS, Poon RT, Blanc JF, Yan L, et al. Brivanib as adjuvant
19 therapy to transarterial chemoembolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma:
20 A randomized phase III trial. *Hepatology.* 2014;60:1697–1707.
21
22
- 23 96. Kudo M, Cheng A-L, Park J-W, Park JH, Liang P-C, Hidaka H, et al. Orantinib versus
24 placebo combined with transcatheter arterial chemoembolisation in patients with
25 unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma (ORIENTAL): a randomised, double-blind,
26 placebo-controlled, multicentre, phase 3 study. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.*
27 2018;3:37–46.
28
29
- 30 97. Johnson PJ, Berhane S, Kagebayashi C, Satomura S, Teng M, Reeves HL, et al.
31 Assessment of liver function in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a new
32 evidence-based approach-the ALBI grade. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;33:550–558.
33
- 34 98. Edeline J, Blanc J-F, Johnson P, Campillo-Gimenez B, Ross P, Ma YT, et al. A
35 multicentre comparison between Child Pugh and Albumin-Bilirubin scores in patients
36 treated with sorafenib for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Liver Int.* 2016;36:1821–1828.
37
38
- 39 99. Kadalayil L, Benini R, Pallan L, O'Beirne J, Marelli L, Yu D, et al. A simple prognostic
40 scoring system for patients receiving transarterial embolisation for hepatocellular
41 cancer. *Ann. Oncol.* 2013;24:2565–2570.
42
- 43 100. Waked I, Berhane S, Toyoda H, Chan SL, Stern N, Palmer D, et al. Transarterial
44 chemo-embolisation of hepatocellular carcinoma: impact of liver function and vascular
45 invasion. *Br. J. Cancer.* 2017;116:448–454.
46
47
- 48 101. Lencioni R, de Baere T, Soulen MC, Rilling WS, Geschwind J-FH. Lipiodol
49 transarterial chemoembolization for hepatocellular carcinoma: A systematic review of
50 efficacy and safety data. *Hepatology.* 2016;64:106–116.
51
- 52 102. Meyer T, Kirkwood A, Roughton M, Beare S, Tsochatzis E, Yu D, et al. A
53 randomised phase II/III trial of 3-weekly cisplatin-based sequential transarterial
54 chemoembolisation vs embolisation alone for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br. J.*
55 *Cancer.* 2013;108:1252–1259.
56
57
- 58 103. Lammer J, Malagari K, Vogl T, Pilleul F, Denys A, Watkinson A, et al. Prospective
59 randomized study of doxorubicin-eluting-bead embolization in the treatment of
60 hepatocellular carcinoma: results of the PRECISION V study. *Cardiovasc. Intervent.*
Radiol. 2010;33:41–52.

104. de Baere T, Arai Y, Lencioni R, Geschwind J-F, Rilling W, Salem R, et al. Treatment of Liver Tumors with Lipiodol TACE: Technical Recommendations from Experts Opinion. *Cardiovasc. Intervent. Radiol.* 2016;39:334–343.
105. Gillmore R, Stuart S, Kirkwood A, Hameeduddin A, Woodward N, Burroughs AK, et al. EASL and mRECIST responses are independent prognostic factors for survival in hepatocellular cancer patients treated with transarterial embolization. *J. Hepatol.* 2011;55:1309–1316.
106. Vincenzi B, Di Maio M, Silletta M, D'Onofrio L, Spoto C, Piccirillo MC, et al. Prognostic Relevance of Objective Response According to EASL Criteria and mRECIST Criteria in Hepatocellular Carcinoma Patients Treated with Loco-Regional Therapies: A Literature-Based Meta-Analysis. *PLoS One.* 2015;10:e0133488.
107. Kudo M. Proposal of Primary Endpoints for TACE Combination Trials with Systemic Therapy: Lessons Learned from 5 Negative Trials and the Positive TACTICS Trial. *Liver Cancer.* 2018;7:225–234.
108. Kudo M, Ueshima K, Ikeda M, Torimura T, Tanabe N, Aikata H, et al. Randomised, multicentre prospective trial of transarterial chemoembolisation (TACE) plus sorafenib as compared with TACE alone in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: TACTICS trial. *Gut* [Internet]. 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/gutjnl-2019-318934>
109. Kudo M, Kubo S, Takayasu K, Sakamoto M, Tanaka M, Ikai I, et al. Response Evaluation Criteria in Cancer of the Liver (RECICL) proposed by the Liver Cancer Study Group of Japan (2009 Revised Version). *Hepatol. Res.* 2010;40:686–692.
110. Kudo M. A New Treatment Option for Intermediate-Stage Hepatocellular Carcinoma with High Tumor Burden: Initial Lenvatinib Therapy with Subsequent Selective TACE. *Liver Cancer.* 2019;8:299–311.
111. Therasse P, Arbuck SG, Eisenhauer EA, Wanders J, Kaplan RS, Rubinstein L, et al. New guidelines to evaluate the response to treatment in solid tumors. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer, National Cancer Institute of the United States, National Cancer Institute of Canada. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute.* 2000;92:205–216.
112. Lencioni R. New data supporting modified RECIST (mRECIST) for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2013;19:1312–1314.
113. Nishino M, Giobbie-Hurder A, Gargano M, Suda M, Ramaiya NH, Hodi FS. Developing a common language for tumor response to immunotherapy: immune-related response criteria using unidimensional measurements. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2013;19:3936–3943.
114. Bohnsack O, Hoos A, Ludajic K. Adaptation and modification of the immune related response criteria (IRRC): IrRECIST. *J. Clin. Orthod.* 2014;32:e22121–e22121.
115. Hodi FS, Ballinger M, Lyons B, Soria J-C, Nishino M, Tabernero J, et al. Immune-Modified Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumors (imRECIST): Refining Guidelines to Assess the Clinical Benefit of Cancer Immunotherapy. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:850–858.
116. Ikeda M, Sung MW, Kudo M, Kobayashi M, Baron AD, Finn RS, et al. A phase 1b

- 1
2 trial of lenvatinib (LEN) plus pembrolizumab (PEM) in patients (pts) with unresectable
3 hepatocellular carcinoma (uHCC). *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:4076–4076.
4
- 5 117. Moehler M, Heo J, Lee HC, Tak WY, Chao Y, Paik SW, et al. Vaccinia-based
6 oncolytic immunotherapy Pexastimogene Devacirepvec in patients with advanced
7 hepatocellular carcinoma after sorafenib failure: a randomized multicenter Phase IIb
8 trial (TRAVERSE). *Oncoimmunology.* 2019;8:1615817.
9
- 10 118. Heo J, Reid T, Ruo L, Breitbach CJ, Rose S, Bloomston M, et al. Randomized
11 dose-finding clinical trial of oncolytic immunotherapeutic vaccinia JX-594 in liver
12 cancer. *Nat. Med.* 2013;1–10.
13
- 14 119. Llovet JM, Zucman-Rossi J, Pikarsky E, Sangro B, Schwartz M, Sherman M, et al.
15 Hepatocellular carcinoma. *Nature Reviews Disease Primers.* 2016;2:16018–16023.
16
- 17 120. Bruix J, Sherman M, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases.
18 Management of hepatocellular carcinoma: an update. *Hepatology.* 2011;53:1020–
19 1022.
20
- 21 121. Qin S, Bai Y, Lim HY, Thongprasert S, Chao Y, Fan J, et al. Randomized,
22 multicenter, open-label study of oxaliplatin plus fluorouracil/leucovorin versus
23 doxorubicin as palliative chemotherapy in patients with advanced hepatocellular
24 carcinoma from Asia. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3501–3508.
25
- 26 122. Abou-Alfa GK, Niedzwieski D, Knox JJ, Kaubisch A, Posey J, Tan BR, et al. Phase
27 III randomized study of sorafenib plus doxorubicin versus sorafenib in patients with
28 advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC): CALGB 80802 (Alliance). *J. Clin. Oncol.*
29 2016;34:192–192.
30
- 31 123. Kudo M, Ueshima K, Yokosuka O, Ogasawara S, Obi S, Izumi N, et al. Sorafenib
32 plus low-dose cisplatin and fluorouracil hepatic arterial infusion chemotherapy versus
33 sorafenib alone in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (SILIUS): a
34 randomised, open label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2018;3:424–
35 432.
36
- 37 124. Yeo W, Mok TS, Zee B, Leung TWT, Lai PBS, Lau WY, et al. A randomized phase
38 III study of doxorubicin versus cisplatin/interferon alpha-2b/doxorubicin/fluorouracil
39 (PIAF) combination chemotherapy for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Natl.*
40 *Cancer Inst.* 2005;97:1532–1538.
41
- 42 125. Chow PK h., Tai B-C, Tan C-K, Machin D, Win KM, Johnson PJ, et al. High-dose
43 tamoxifen in the treatment of inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma: A multicenter
44 randomized controlled trial. *Hepatology.* 2002;36:1221–1226.
45
- 46 126. Johnson PJ, Qin S, Park J-W, Poon RTP, Raoul J-L, Philip PA, et al. Brivanib
47 versus sorafenib as first-line therapy in patients with unresectable, advanced
48 hepatocellular carcinoma: results from the randomized phase III BRISK-FL study. *J.*
49 *Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3517–3524.
50
- 51 127. Llovet JM, Decaens T, Raoul JL, Boucher E, Kudo M, Chang C, et al. Brivanib in
52 patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma who were intolerant to sorafenib or
53 for whom sorafenib failed: results from the randomized phase III BRISK-PS study. *J.*
54 *Clin. Oncol.* 2013;31:3509–3516.
55
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 128. Cainap C, Qin S, Huang W-T, Chung IJ, Pan H, Cheng Y, et al. Linifanib versus
3 Sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: results of a
4 randomized phase III trial. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2015;33:172–179.
5
- 6 129. Zhu AX, Rosmorduc O, Evans TRJ, Ross PJ, Santoro A, Carrilho FJ, et al.
7 SEARCH: a phase III, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of sorafenib
8 plus erlotinib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
9 2015;33:559–566.
10
- 11 130. Zhu AX, Kudo M, Assenat E, Cattan S, Kang Y-K, Lim HY, et al. Effect of
12 everolimus on survival in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma after failure of
13 sorafenib: the EVOLVE-1 randomized clinical trial. *JAMA.* 2014;312:57–67.
14
- 15 131. Rimassa L, Assenat E, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Pracht M, Zagonel V, Mathurin P, et
16 al. Tivantinib for second-line treatment of MET-high, advanced hepatocellular
17 carcinoma (METIV-HCC): a final analysis of a phase 3, randomised, placebo-
18 controlled study. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018 [cited 2018 Apr 4];Available from:
19 [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(18\)30146-3](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30146-3)
20
21
22
- 23 132. Merle P, Blanc J-F, Phelip J-M, Pelletier G, Bronowicki J-P, Touchefeu Y, et al.
24 Doxorubicin-loaded nanoparticles for patients with advanced hepatocellular
25 carcinoma after sorafenib treatment failure (RELIVE): a phase 3 randomised
26 controlled trial. *Lancet Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2019;4:454–465.
27
28
- 29 133. Abou-Alfa GK, Qin S, Ryoo B-Y, Lu S-N, Yen C-J, Feng Y-H, et al. Phase III
30 randomized study of second line ADI-PEG 20 plus best supportive care versus
31 placebo plus best supportive care in patients with advanced hepatocellular
32 carcinoma. *Ann. Oncol.* 2018;29:1402–1408.
33
- 34 134. Roche's Tecentriq in combination with Avastin increased overall survival and
35 progression-free survival in people with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma
36 [Internet]. [cited 2019 Nov 4];Available from:
37 <https://www.roche.com/media/releases/med-cor-2019-10-21.htm>
38
39
- 40 135. Zhu AX, Park JO, Ryoo B-Y, Yen C-J, Poon R, Pastorelli D, et al. Ramucirumab
41 versus placebo as second-line treatment in patients with advanced hepatocellular
42 carcinoma following first-line therapy with sorafenib (REACH): a randomised, double-
43 blind, multicentre, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* 2015;16:859–870.
44
- 45 136. Llovet JM, Pena CEA, Lathia CD, Shan M, Meinhardt G, Bruix J, et al. Plasma
46 Biomarkers as Predictors of Outcome in Patients with Advanced Hepatocellular
47 Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 2012;18:2290–2300.
48
49
- 50 137. Vilgrain V, Pereira H, Assenat E, Guiu B, Ilonca AD, Pageaux G-P, et al. Efficacy
51 and safety of selective internal radiotherapy with yttrium-90 resin microspheres
52 compared with sorafenib in locally advanced and inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma
53 (SARAH): an open-label randomised controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol.* [Internet].
54 2017;Available from: [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(17\)30683-6](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30683-6)
55
56
- 57 138. Chow PKH, Gandhi M, Tan S-B, Khin MW, Khasbazar A, Ong J, et al. SIRveNIB:
58 Selective Internal Radiation Therapy Versus Sorafenib in Asia-Pacific Patients With
59 Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2018;36:1913–1921.
60
139. Ricke J, Sangro B, Amthauer H, Bargellini I, Bartenstein P, De Toni E, et al. The

- 1
2 impact of combining Selective Internal Radiation Therapy (SIRT) with Sorafenib on
3 overall survival in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: The Soramic trial
4 palliative cohort. *J. Hepatol.* 2018;68:S102.
5
- 6
7 140. Cheng A-L, Kang Y-K, Chen Z, Tsao C-J, Qin S, Kim JS, et al. Efficacy and safety
8 of sorafenib in patients in the Asia-Pacific region with advanced hepatocellular
9 carcinoma: a phase III randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet*
10 *Oncol.* 2009;10:25–34.
11
- 12 141. He M, Li Q, Zou R, Shen J, Fang W, Tan G, et al. Sorafenib Plus Hepatic Arterial
13 Infusion of Oxaliplatin, Fluorouracil, and Leucovorin vs Sorafenib Alone for
14 Hepatocellular Carcinoma With Portal Vein Invasion: A Randomized Clinical Trial.
15 *JAMA Oncol* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
16 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.0250>
17
18
- 19 142. Jouve J-L, Lecomte T, Bouché O, Barbier E, Khemissa Akouz F, Riachi G, et al.
20 Pravastatin combination with sorafenib does not improve survival in advanced
21 hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2019;71:516–522.
22
- 23 143. Abou-Alfa GK, Shi Q, Knox JJ, Kaubisch A, Niedzwiecki D, Posey J, et al.
24 Assessment of Treatment With Sorafenib Plus Doxorubicin vs Sorafenib Alone in
25 Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Phase 3 CALGB 80802
26 Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA Oncol* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
27 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2019.2792>
28
29
- 30 144. Torre LA, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer
31 statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 2015;65:87–108.
32
- 33 145. Gan HK, You B, Pond GR, Chen EX. Assumptions of expected benefits in
34 randomized phase III trials evaluating systemic treatments for cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer*
35 *Inst.* 2012;104:590–598.
36
- 37 146. Oxnard GR, Wilcox KH, Gonen M, Polotsky M, Hirsch BR, Schwartz LH. Response
38 Rate as a Regulatory End Point in Single-Arm Studies of Advanced Solid Tumors.
39 *JAMA Oncol.* 2016;2:772–779.
40
41
- 42 147. Sangro B, Gomez-Martin C, de la Mata M, Iñarrairaegui M, Garralda E, Barrera P,
43 et al. A clinical trial of CTLA-4 blockade with tremelimumab in patients with
44 hepatocellular carcinoma and chronic hepatitis C. *J. Hepatol.* 2013;59:81–88.
45
- 46 148. Qin SK, Ren ZG, Meng ZQ, Chen ZD, Chai XL, Xiong JP, et al. LBA27A
47 randomized multicentered phase II study to evaluate SHR-1210 (PD-1 antibody) in
48 subjects with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) who failed or intolerable to
49 prior systemic treatment. *Ann. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2018 [cited 2019 Sep 23];29.
50 Available from:
51 https://academic.oup.com/annonc/article/29/suppl_8/mdy424.029/5141688
52
53
- 54 149. Finn RS, Ryoo B-Y, Merle P, Kudo M, Bouattour M, Lim H-Y, et al. Results of
55 KEYNOTE-240: phase 3 study of pembrolizumab (Pembro) vs best supportive care
56 (BSC) for second line therapy in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). *J. Clin.*
57 *Orthod.* 2019;37:4004–4004.
58
59
- 60 150. Duffy AG, Ulahannan SV, Makorova-Rusher O, Rahma O, Wedemeyer H, Pratt D,
et al. Tremelimumab in combination with ablation in patients with advanced

- 1
2 hepatocellular carcinoma. *J. Hepatol.* 2017;66:545–551.
3
- 4 151. Yau T, Kang Y-K, Kim T-Y, El-Khoueiry AB, Santoro A, Sangro B, et al. Nivolumab
5 (NIVO) + ipilimumab (IPI) combination therapy in patients (pts) with advanced
6 hepatocellular carcinoma (aHCC): Results from CheckMate 040. *J. Clin. Oncol.*
7 2019;37:4012–4012.
8
- 9 152. Greten TF, Lai CW, Li G, Staveley-O’Carroll KF. Targeted and Immune-Based
10 Therapies for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Gastroenterology.* 2019;156:510–524.
11
- 12 153. Greten TF, Sangro B. Targets for immunotherapy of liver cancer. *J. Hepatol.*
13 [Internet]. 2017; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jhep.2017.09.007>
14
- 15 154. Anagnostou V, Yarchoan M, Hansen AR, Wang H, Verde F, Sharon E, et al.
16 Immuno-oncology Trial Endpoints: Capturing Clinically Meaningful Activity. *Clin.*
17 *Cancer Res.* 2017;23:4959–4969.
18
- 19 155. Ritchie G, Gasper H, Man J, Lord S, Marschner I, Friedlander M, et al. Defining the
20 Most Appropriate Primary End Point in Phase 2 Trials of Immune Checkpoint
21 Inhibitors for Advanced Solid Cancers: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis.
22 *JAMA Oncol.* 2018;4:522–528.
23
- 24 156. Simon RM, Paik S, Hayes DF. Use of Archived Specimens in Evaluation of
25 Prognostic and Predictive Biomarkers. *JNCI Journal of the National Cancer Institute.*
26 2009;101:1446–1452.
27
- 28 157. Mandrekar SJ, Sargent DJ. Clinical trial designs for predictive biomarker validation:
29 theoretical considerations and practical challenges. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 2009;27:4027–
30 4034.
31
- 32 158. Mandrekar SJ, Sargent DJ. Genomic advances and their impact on clinical trial
33 design. *Genome Med.* 2009;1:69.
34
- 35 159. Renfro LA, An M-W, Mandrekar SJ. Precision oncology: A new era of cancer
36 clinical trials. *Cancer Lett.* 2017;387:121–126.
37
- 38 160. Biomarker definition NCI [Internet]. Available from:
39 <https://www.cancer.gov/publications/dictionaries/cancer-terms/def/biomarker>
40
- 41 161. Rebouissou S, La Bella T, Rekik S, Imbeaud S, Calatayud A-L, Rohr-Udilova N, et
42 al. Proliferation Markers Are Associated with MET Expression in Hepatocellular
43 Carcinoma and Predict Tivantinib Sensitivity In Vitro. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet].
44 2017; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-3118>
45
- 46 162. Zhu AX, Baron AD, Malfertheiner P, Kudo M, Kawazoe S, Pezet D, et al.
47 Ramucirumab as Second-Line Treatment in Patients With Advanced Hepatocellular
48 Carcinoma: Analysis of REACH Trial Results by Child-Pugh Score. *JAMA Oncol.*
49 2017;3:235–243.
50
- 51 163. Kim RD, Sarker D, Meyer T, Yau T, Macarulla T, Park J-W, et al. First-in-Human
52 Phase I Study of Fisogatinib (BLU-554) Validates Aberrant Fibroblast Growth Factor
53 19 Signaling as a Driver Event in Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Cancer Discov.*
54 [Internet]. 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0555>
55
56
57
58
59
60

- 1
2 164. Sia D, Jiao Y, Martinez-Quetglas I, Kuchuk O, Villacorta-Martin C, Castro de Moura
3 M, et al. Identification of an Immune-specific Class of Hepatocellular Carcinoma,
4 Based on Molecular Features. *Gastroenterology*. 2017;153:812–826.
5
- 6 165. Finn RS, Kudo M, Cheng A-L, Wyrwicz L, Ngan R, Blanc J-F, et al. LBA30Analysis
7 of serum biomarkers (BM) in patients (pts) from a phase 3 study of lenvatinib (LEN)
8 vs sorafenib (SOR) as first-line treatment for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma
9 (uHCC). *Ann. Oncol.* [Internet]. 2017 [cited 2019 Jul 26];28. Available from:
10 https://academic.oup.com/annonc/article-abstract/28/suppl_5/mdx440.022/4109934
11
12
- 13 166. Kaseb AO, Carmagnani Pestana R, Vence LM, Blando JM, Singh S, Ikoma N, et al.
14 Randomized, open-label, perioperative phase II study evaluating nivolumab alone
15 versus nivolumab plus ipilimumab in patients with resectable HCC. *J. Clin. Orthod.*
16 2019;37:185–185.
17
- 18 167. Kwak EL, Bang Y-J, Camidge DR, Shaw AT, Solomon B, Maki RG, et al.
19 Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
20 2010;363:1693–1703.
21
22
- 23 168. Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, Gurubhagavatula S, Okimoto RA, Brannigan BW, et
24 al. Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying
25 responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. *N. Engl. J. Med.*
26 2004;350:2129–2139.
27
28
- 29 169. Slamon DJ, Leyland-Jones B, Shak S, Fuchs H, Paton V, Bajamonde A, et al. Use
30 of chemotherapy plus a monoclonal antibody against HER2 for metastatic breast
31 cancer that overexpresses HER2. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2001;344:783–792.
32
- 33 170. Finn RS, Martin M, Rugo HS, Jones S, Im S-A, Gelmon K, et al. Palbociclib and
34 Letrozole in Advanced Breast Cancer. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2016;375:1925–1936.
35
- 36 171. Demetri GD, von Mehren M, Blanke CD, Van den Abbeele AD, Eisenberg B,
37 Roberts PJ, et al. Efficacy and safety of imatinib mesylate in advanced
38 gastrointestinal stromal tumors. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2002;347:472–480.
39
40
- 41 172. Druker BJ, Guilhot F, O'Brien SG, Gathmann I, Kantarjian H, Gattermann N, et al.
42 Five-year follow-up of patients receiving imatinib for chronic myeloid leukemia. *N.*
43 *Engl. J. Med.* 2006;355:2408–2417.
44
- 45 173. Pantel K. Blood-Based Analysis of Circulating Cell-Free DNA and Tumor Cells for
46 Early Cancer Detection. *PLoS Med.* 2016;13:e1002205.
47
48
- 49 174. Mandrekar SJ, An M-W, Sargent DJ. A review of phase II trial designs for initial
50 marker validation. *Contemp. Clin. Trials.* 2013;36:597–604.
51
- 52 175. Labgaa I, Villanueva A. Liquid biopsy in liver cancer. *Discov. Med.* 2015;19:263–
53 273.
54
- 55 176. Corcoran RB, Chabner BA. Application of Cell-free DNA Analysis to Cancer
56 Treatment. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 2018;379:1754–1765.
57
- 58 177. Wan JCM, Massie C, Garcia-Corbacho J, Mouliere F, Brenton JD, Caldas C, et al.
59 Liquid biopsies come of age: towards implementation of circulating tumour DNA. *Nat.*
60 *Rev. Cancer.* 2017;17:223–238.

- 1
2 178. Office of the Commissioner. FDA approves first blood test to detect gene mutation
3 associated with non-small cell lung cancer [Internet]. 2016 [cited 2019 May
4 16]; Available from: [https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-](https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer)
5 [approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer](https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-approves-first-blood-test-detect-gene-mutation-associated-non-small-cell-lung-cancer)
6
- 7
8 179. Labgaa I, Villacorta-Martin C, D'Avola D, Craig AJ, von Felden J, Martins-Filho SN,
9 et al. A pilot study of ultra-deep targeted sequencing of plasma DNA identifies driver
10 mutations in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene*. 2018;37:3740–3752.
11
- 12 180. Qu C, Wang Y, Wang P, Chen K, Wang M, Zeng H, et al. Detection of early-stage
13 hepatocellular carcinoma in asymptomatic HBsAg-seropositive individuals by liquid
14 biopsy. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
15 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1819799116>
16
- 17
18 181. Xu R-H, Wei W, Krawczyk M, Wang W, Luo H, Flagg K, et al. Circulating tumour
19 DNA methylation markers for diagnosis and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma.
20 *Nat. Mater.* 2017;16:1155–1161.
21
- 22 182. Bhan I, Mosesso K, Goyal L, Philipp J, Kalinich M, Franses JW, et al. Detection and
23 Analysis of Circulating Epithelial Cells in Liquid Biopsies From Patients With Liver
24 Disease. *Gastroenterology* [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
25 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2018.09.020>
26
- 27
28 183. Oh CR, Kong S-Y, Im H-S, Kim HJ, Kim MK, Yoon K-A, et al. Genome-wide copy
29 number alteration and VEGFA amplification of circulating cell-free DNA as a
30 biomarker in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma patients treated with Sorafenib.
31 *BMC Cancer*. 2019;19:292.
32
- 33 184. Lim HY, Merle P, Weiss KH, Yau TC, Ross P, Mazzaferro V, et al. Phase II Studies
34 with Refametinib or Refametinib plus Sorafenib in Patients with RAS-mutated
35 Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from:
36 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-3588>
37
- 38
39 185. Chie W-C, Blazeby JM, Hsiao C-F, Chiu H-C, Poon RT, Mikoshiba N, et al.
40 International cross-cultural field validation of an European Organization for Research
41 and Treatment of Cancer questionnaire module for patients with primary liver cancer,
42 the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer quality-of-life
43 questionnaire HCC18. *Hepatology*. 2012;55:1122–1129.
44
- 45 186. Blazeby JM, Currie E, Zee BCY, Chie W-C, Poon RT, Garden OJ, et al.
46 Development of a questionnaire module to supplement the EORTC QLQ-C30 to
47 assess quality of life in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, the EORTC QLQ-
48 HCC18. *Eur. J. Cancer*. 2004;40:2439–2444.
49
- 50
51 187. Huang G, Chen X, Lau WY, Shen F, Wang RY, Yuan SX, et al. Quality of life after
52 surgical resection compared with radiofrequency ablation for small hepatocellular
53 carcinomas. *Br. J. Surg.* 2014;101:1006–1015.
54
- 55 188. Salem R, Gilbertsen M, Butt Z, Memon K, Vouche M, Hickey R, et al. Increased
56 quality of life among hepatocellular carcinoma patients treated with radioembolization,
57 compared with chemoembolization. *Clin. Gastroenterol. Hepatol.* 2013;11:1358–
58 1365.e1.
59
- 60 189. Kudo M, Trevisani F, Abou-Alfa GK, Rimassa L. Hepatocellular Carcinoma:

- 1
2 Therapeutic Guidelines and Medical Treatment. *Liver Cancer*. 2016;6:16–26.
3
- 4 190. Omata M, Cheng A-L, Kokudo N, Kudo M, Lee JM, Jia J, et al. Asia-Pacific clinical
5 practice guidelines on the management of hepatocellular carcinoma: a 2017 update.
6 *Hepatol. Int.* 2017;11:317–370.
7
- 8 191. Kokudo N, Takemura N, Hasegawa K, Takayama T, Kubo S, Shimada M, et al.
9 Clinical practice guidelines for hepatocellular carcinoma: The Japan Society of
10 Hepatology 2017 (4th JSH-HCC guidelines) 2019 update. *Hepatol. Res.* [Internet].
11 2019; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/hepr.13411>
12
13
- 14 192. Surveillance group, Diagnosis group, Staging group, Surgery group, Local ablation
15 group, TACE/TARE/HAI group, et al. Management consensus guideline for
16 hepatocellular carcinoma: 2016 updated by the Taiwan Liver Cancer Association and
17 the Gastroenterological Society of Taiwan. *J. Formos. Med. Assoc.* 2018;117:381–
18 403.
19
- 20 193. Zhou J, Sun H-C, Wang Z, Cong W-M, Wang J-H, Zeng M-S, et al. Guidelines for
21 Diagnosis and Treatment of Primary Liver Cancer in China (2017 Edition). *Liver*
22 *Cancer*. 2018;7:235–260.
23
24
- 25 194. Korean Liver Cancer Association, National Cancer Center. 2018 Korean Liver
26 Cancer Association-National Cancer Center Korea Practice Guidelines for the
27 Management of Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Gut Liver*. 2019;13:227–299.
28
- 29 195. Sharma P, Allison JP. The future of immune checkpoint therapy. *Science*.
30 2015;348:56–61.
31
32
- 33 196. Fukumura D, Kloepper J, Amoozgar Z, Duda DG, Jain RK. Enhancing cancer
34 immunotherapy using antiangiogenics: opportunities and challenges. *Nat. Rev. Clin.*
35 *Oncol.* 2018;15:325–340.
36
37
- 38 197. Kalbasi A, Ribas A. Tumour-intrinsic resistance to immune checkpoint blockade.
39 *Nat. Rev. Immunol.* 2020;20:25–39.
40
- 41 198. Ruiz de Galarreta M, Bresnahan E, Molina-Sanchez P, Lindblad KE, Maier B, Sia
42 D, et al. β -catenin activation promotes immune escape and resistance to anti-PD-1
43 therapy in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Discov.* [Internet]. 2019; Available from:
44 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0074>
45
- 46 199. Pinyol R, Sia D, Llovet JM. Immune exclusion-Wnt/CTNNB1 class predicts
47 resistance to immunotherapies in HCC. *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2019; Available
48 from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-3778>
49
- 50 200. Harding JJ, Nandakumar S, Armenia J, Khalil DN, Albano M, Ly M, et al.
51 Prospective Genotyping of Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Clinical Implications of Next
52 Generation Sequencing for Matching Patients to Targeted and Immune Therapies.
53 *Clin. Cancer Res.* [Internet]. 2018; Available from: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-2293>
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

Figure 1

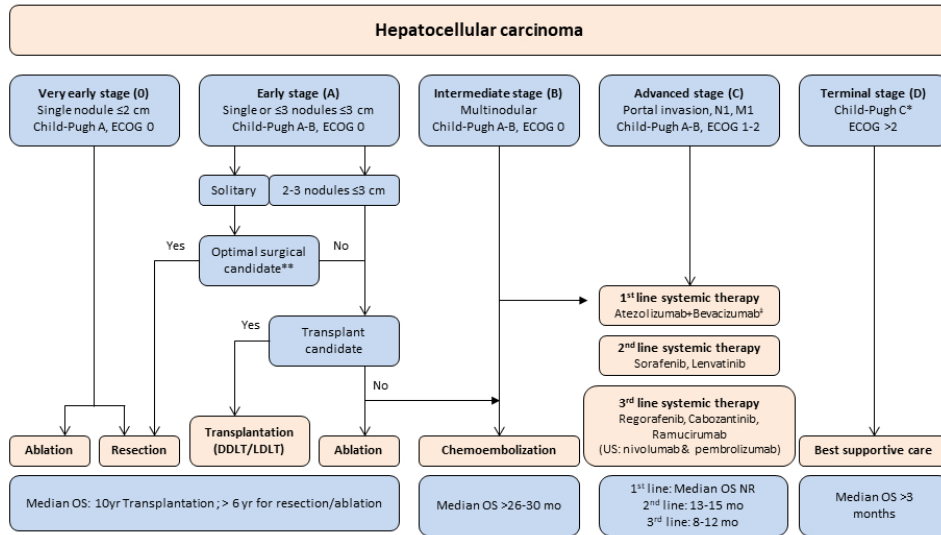


Figure 1

254x190mm (96 x 96 DPI)

Figure 2A

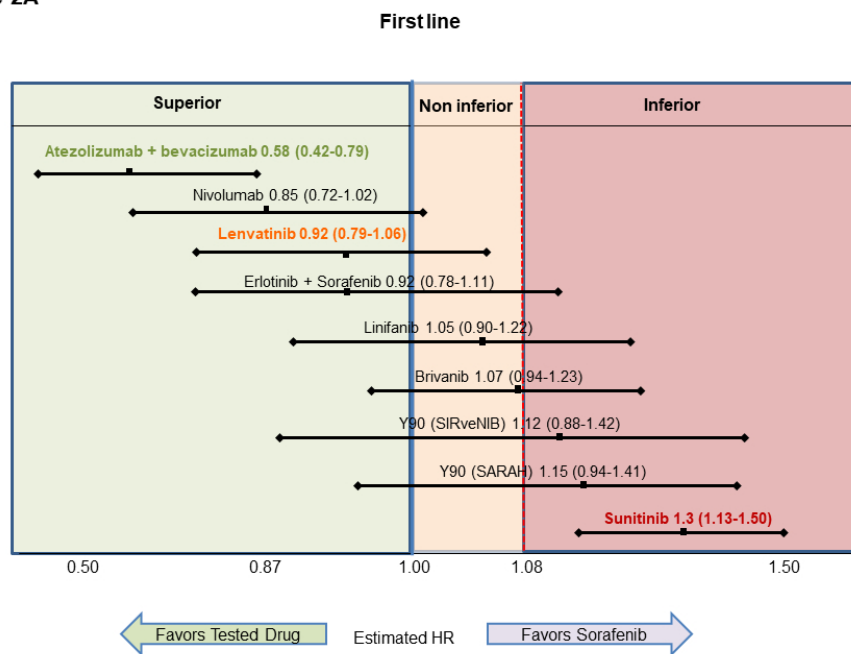


Figure 2A

254x190mm (96 x 96 DPI)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60

Figure 2B

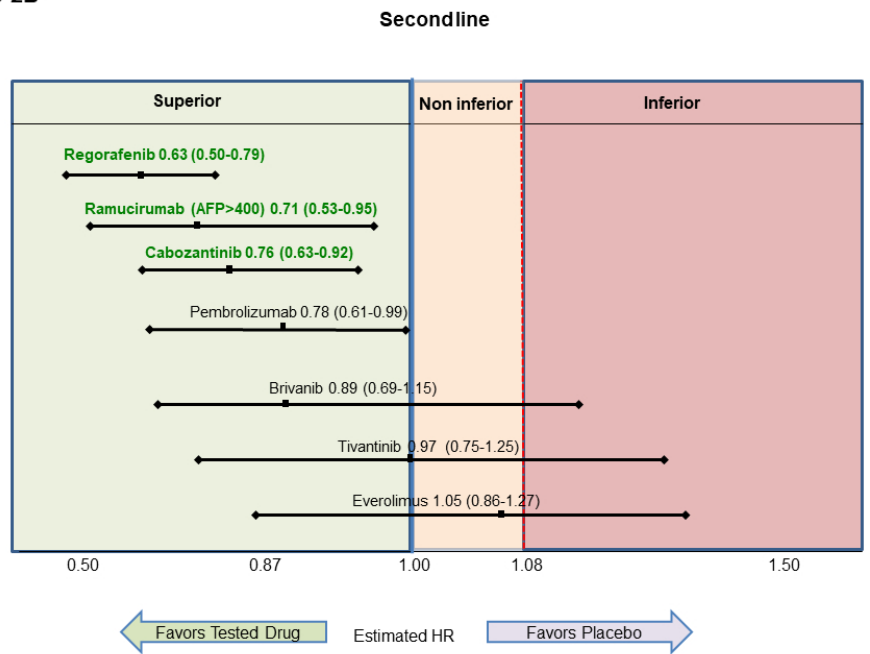


Figure 2B

254x190mm (96 x 96 DPI)

Figure 3

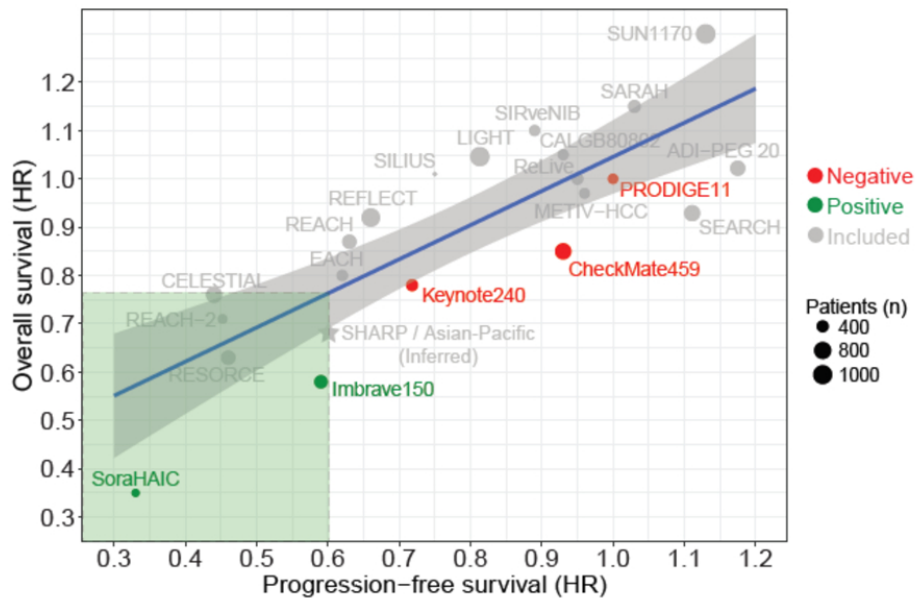


Figure 3

254x190mm (96 x 96 DPI)